



# WALLACE & TIERNAN<sup>®</sup> MEASURING AND CONTROL SYSTEM SFC from version V:3.08

**INSTRUCTION MANUAL** 

Please note

Original instruction manual!

# Contents

| 1. | 1. Introduction |                                 | 5   |
|----|-----------------|---------------------------------|-----|
|    | 1.1             | Documentation                   | 5   |
|    | 1.2             | Conventions                     | 6   |
| 2. | Safety          |                                 | 7   |
|    | 2.1             | Intended use                    | 7   |
|    | 2.2             | General safety instructions     | 7   |
|    | 2.3             | Warranty conditions             | 8   |
|    | 2.4             | Specific Operating Phases       | 9   |
|    | 2.5             | Notes on Special Dangers        | 10  |
| 3. | Descrip         | tion                            | 11  |
|    | 3.1             | Versions                        | 11  |
|    | 3.2             | Technical Data                  | 12  |
|    | 3.3             | Scope of supply                 | 28  |
|    | 3.4             | Description                     | 30  |
| 4. | Functio         | ns                              | 41  |
|    | 4.1             | General                         | 41  |
|    | 4.2             | Measurement inputs              | 45  |
|    | 4.3             | Outputs                         | 66  |
|    | 4.4             | SFC CAN retrofit kit            | 67  |
|    | 4.5             | Applications                    | 68  |
|    | 4.6             | Controller outputs              | 84  |
|    | 4.7             | Control parameters              | 87  |
|    | 4.8             | Alarms                          | 95  |
|    | 4.9             | Adaption                        | 98  |
|    | 4.10            | Sample water inlet disinfection | 103 |
|    | 4.11            | Serial interfaces               | 106 |
|    | 4.12            | CAN interface                   | 107 |
|    | 4.13            | Fieldbus                        | 110 |
|    | 4.14            | Firmware update                 | 111 |
|    | 4.15            | Actuator feedback               | 113 |
|    | 4.16            | Digital inputs                  | 113 |
|    | 4.17            | SD memory card                  | 114 |
|    | 4.18            | Unit configuration              | 116 |
|    | 4.19            | Special Features                | 117 |

| C |   | ٢ | 2 |
|---|---|---|---|
| S | Г | C | ر |

| 5.  | Installation      |   |     |
|-----|-------------------|---|-----|
|     | 5.1               | Transport and storage                         | 119 |
|     | 5.2               | Installation                                  | 119 |
|     | 5.3               | Commissioning                                 | 129 |
|     | 5.4               | System shut down                              | 155 |
| 6.  | Operatio          | on  | 157 |
|     | 6.1               | Display and operator controls                 | 157 |
|     | 6.2               | Notes on operation                            | 163 |
|     | 6.3               | Menu structure                                | 165 |
|     | 6.4               | Calibration                                   | 201 |
|     | 6.5               | Errors and remedies                           | 213 |
| 7.  | Mainten           | ance  | 219 |
|     | 7.1               | Maintenance Schedules                         | 219 |
|     | 7.2               | Maintenance of flow block assembly DEPOLOX® 5 | 222 |
|     | 7.3               | Maintaining membrane sensors                  | 227 |
|     | 7.4               | Maintaining Redox electrode                   | 227 |
|     | 7.5               | Maintaining pH electrode                      | 228 |
|     | 7.6               | Maintaining fluoride electrode                | 228 |
|     | 7.7               | Maintaining conductivity electrode            | 229 |
|     | 7.8               | Changing the fuse on the A&C board            | 230 |
|     | 7.9               | Replacing the battery                         | 231 |
| 8.  | Comple            | te Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts       | 233 |
| 9.  | Wiring E          | Diagrams                                      | 267 |
| 10. | Declara           | tions and certificates                        | 273 |
|     | 10.1              | Declaration of Conformity                     | 273 |
|     | 10.2              | Certificate of Compliance                     | 275 |
| 11. | 1. Settings Table |   |     |
| 12. | 2. Index          |   |     |

# 1. Introduction

# 1.1 Documentation

### 1.1.1 Target groups

This instruction manual provides the information for installation, operating and maintenance personnel. It is required for operation and maintenance of the unit.

This instruction manual is intended for the operating personnel. It contains important information for safe, reliable, trouble-free and economical operation of the unit. Observance of this information helps to prevent danger, lowers repair costs, reduces down-times, and also increases the reliability and service life of the unit.

The chapters on installation and maintenance are solely provided for trained service personnel. These sections contain important information on the installation, configuration and commissioning of the unit as well as information on its repair.

All persons working with the unit must have read and understood the operating instructions, in particular, the safety instructions it contains.

Please consult the table of contents and the index to find the information you require quickly.

# 1.2 Conventions



#### Please note

This operating manual contains a number of notes with different priorities, which are marked with symbols.

| Picto-<br>gram | Note        | Meaning  |
|----------------|-------------|--|
|                | Danger!     | Immediate danger to life and limb!<br>If the situation is not handled<br>properly, death or serious injury<br>may be the result. |
|                | Warning!    | Danger to life and limb! If the situation is not handled properly, death or serious injury may be the result.                    |
|                | Caution!    | If this warning is not observed,<br>medium or slight injury or damage<br>to the equipment may the result.                        |
|                | Warning!    | Electrical hazard.   |
|                | Please note | These notes facilitate work with the unit.   |

Safety

# 2. Safety

# 2.1 Intended use

The SFC is exclusively designed for measurement and control tasks required for the treatment of waste water, potable water, industrial water, and bathing water.

The operational safety of the unit is only guaranteed if it is used in accordance with its intended application. The unit may only be used for the purpose defined in the order and under the operating conditions indicated in the technical specifications.

Compliance with the intended use also includes reading this operating manual and observing all the instructions it contains. Furthermore, all inspection and maintenance work must be performed at the prescribed intervals.

The operator bears full and sole responsibility if this unit is put to any use which does not comply strictly and exclusively with this intended use.

# 2.2 General safety instructions

Evoqua Water Technologies GmbH attaches great importance to ensuring that work on its system is always perfectly safe. This was already taken into account in the design of the system, by the integration of safety features.

- Safety instructions The safety instructions in this documentation must always be observed. These do not affect the validity of any additional national or company safety instructions.
- Safety instructions on the<br/>systemAll safety instructions attached to the system itself must be<br/>observed. They must always be complete and easily legible.

| Technical standard           | The system or unit has been constructed in accordance with state-<br>of-the-art technology and the accepted safety regulations.<br>However, in the event of the system or unit being used by persons<br>who have not been adequately instructed, risks to life and limb of<br>such persons or third parties and damage to the system or unit<br>itself or to other property cannot be ruled out. Work not described<br>in this operating manual may only be performed by authorized<br>personnel. |
|------------------------------|---|
| Personnel                    | The operator of the system must ensure that only authorized and<br>qualified specialized personnel are permitted to work with and on<br>the unit within their defined scope of authority. "Authorized<br>specialists" are trained technicians employed by the operator, by<br>Evoqua, or, if applicable, the service partner. Only qualified<br>electricians may perform work on electrical components.   |
| Spare parts / components     | Trouble-free operation of the system is only guaranteed if original<br>spare parts and components are used in precisely the combination<br>described in this operating manual. Failure to observe this<br>instruction may incur the risk of malfunction or damage to the<br>system.   |
| Modifications and extensions | Never attempt to perform any modifications, extensions or conversions to the unit without the written approval of the manufacturer! These could have an adverse affect on safety!   |
| Electrical power             | During normal operation, the control unit must remain closed.   |
|                              | Before starting any assembly, inspection, maintenance, or repair<br>work, the system must be switched OFF using the emergency stop<br>switch and the switch must be secured against reactivation.   |
|                              | Connect all cables in accordance with the wiring diagram.   |
| Waste disposal               | Ensure safe and environmentally-friendly disposal of agents and replaced parts.   |

# 2.3 Warranty conditions

The following must be observed for compliance with warranty conditions:

- Installation, commissioning by Evoqua technicians or trained and authorized specialized personnel, e.g. of contracted companies
- Intended use
- Observation of the operational parameters and settings.
- The unit may only be operated by trained personnel.

- An operating log book must be kept (only in the public sector).
- Only approved calibration chemicals may be used
- The unit must not be exposed to frost.
- Maintenance work must be executed
- Use of original spare parts

If any of the above conditions are not met, the warranty is void.

# 2.4 Specific Operating Phases

| Normal operation                  | Never employ any working methods which could affect safety!   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
|                                   | Only run the unit when the housing is closed!   |
|                                   | Inspect the unit at least once daily for externally visible damage<br>and faults! Inform the responsible person/authority immediately of<br>any detected changes (including any changes in the operating<br>performance)! |
|                                   | In the event of malfunctions, always switch the unit off immediately! Have malfunctions remedied immediately!   |
| Installation and maintenance work | Always perform installation or maintenance work in accordance<br>with this operating manual or the technical documentation for<br>installed unit components!  |
|                                   | Secure the unit against activation during installation and maintenance work!  |
|                                   | Always retighten released screw connections!  |
|                                   | Never use corrosive cleaning agents!<br>Use only a damp cloth to clean the unit.  |
|                                   | Ensure safe disposal of agents and replaced parts in accordance with environmental regulations!   |

# 2.5 Notes on Special Dangers

| Electrical power               | Only use original fuses with the prescribed current rating! In the event of a fault in the electrical power supply, switch the unit off immediately!  |
|--------------------------------|---|
|                                | Only qualified electricians or trained personnel supervised by a qualified electrician are permitted to perform any work on electrical components in accordance with valid electro-technical regulations.                         |
|                                | If stipulated, disconnect all parts of the unit from the power supply<br>before performing any inspection, maintenance or repair work.<br>Then first test the disconnected components to ensure they do not<br>carry any voltage. |
|                                | Inspect/check the electrical system of the unit regularly. Remedy any faults immediately!   |
|                                | Connect disconnected cables in accordance with the wiring diagram!  |
| Agents and chemical substances | When handling agents and chemical substances always observe the safety regulations valid for each product!  |
|                                | Always remove leaked agents immediately with a suitable binder or wipe up with a cloth. Danger of slipping!   |
|                                | Always collect and dispose of agents or used cleaning material separately and in accordance with valid national regulations!  |

# 3. Description

# 3.1 Versions

There are two versions of the SFC.

They differ in the type and number of inputs and outputs that are available and in terms of functionality.

Both versions are available either as control cabinet units or wall units.

Version 1 (SFC with sensor measuring module) This version supports all applications 1 - 3 (see 4.5 "Applications")

- slot for 1 sensor module
- 4 relays
- 2x mA input
- 1x feedback input
- 2x digital input
- 1x temperature input PT 1000
- 1x mA output
- 1x SD memory card receptacle
- 1x CAN interface
- 1x RS485 interface
- 1x RS232 interface for Gateway
- 1x interface for firmware updates

Version 2 = SFC SC

This version only supports application 3 (see 4.5 "Applications") without the possibility of recording measurements using the sensor measuring module.

- 2 relays
- 1 x mA input
- 1x feedback input
- 2x digital input
- 1x mA output
- 1x interface for firmware updates

# 3.2 Technical Data

### 3.2.1 Electronic module SFC

Housing

| Dimensions (WxHxD) | 185 x 265 x 145 mm |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| Weight             | approx. 2.5 kg     |
| Protection type    | IP 66              |

#### Electronics

| Mains connection  |  |
|---|--|
| 100 – 240 V AC ± 10%, 50 – 60 Hz, 15 W, Fuse 1A time lag<br>250 V Type: 5 x 20 mm |  |
| 24 V DC ± 20%, 15 W, Fuse 1 A time lag 250 V<br>Type: 5 x 20 mm                   |  |

| Insulation           |   |
|----------------------|---|
| Overvoltage category | 2 |
| Pollution degree     | 2 |
| Measuring category   | 1 |



#### Caution!

Do not use the device in measuring categories II, III and IV.

| Operating conditions |                                  |  |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| Ambient temperature  | 0 – 50 °C                        |  |
| Humidity             | < 80 %                           |  |
| Environment          | Indoor use<br>No direct sunlight |  |
| max. altitude        | 2000 m                           |  |
| Atmospheric pressure | 75 – 106 kPa                     |  |
| Storage temperature  | -20 – +70 °C                     |  |
| Noise emission       | <45 dB                           |  |

#### **Digital inputs**

2x inputs for voltage-free contact (< 100 Ohm) power supply via SFC (12 V)

DI 1: Sample water monitoring / freely selectable in menu

DI 2: Freely selectable in menu

Measurement inputs 1x temperature input PT 1000 (0°C – 50°C) with sensor error display (not with Version 2) 1x feedback input positioner position feedback Potentiometer 1kOhm or 5kOhm, 0 – 1 V, 0 – 20 mA (selectable via DIP switch) 1x measured value input (electrically isolated up to 50 V to ground) for plug-in cards of the sensor measuring module (not with Version 2): • 3-electrode cell for chlorine, chlorine dioxide or potassium permanganate Membrane sensors for total chlorine TC1/TC3, free chlorine FC1/FC2, chlorine dioxide CD7, ozone OZ7 • pH value Redox voltage • Fluoride · Conductivity mA/V input 1x mA input for flow rate 0 - 20 mA/4 - 20 mA In SFC units with a 24 V supply voltage this input is not electrically isolated from the 24 V DC supply voltage. 1x mA input for external setpoint or dosing factor 0 - 20 mA/4 - 20 mA (not with Version 2) In SFC units with a 24 V supply voltage this input is not

electrically isolated from the 24 V DC supply voltage.

### Interfaces

| 1x RS | S232 for firmware updates (not galvanically isolated)          |
|-------|--|
| 1x R  | S485 (optional) (not with Version 2) for connection to:        |
| •     | ChemWeb-Server   |
| •     | OPC Server Data Access V2.0                                    |
| •     | CMS Software 3.0   |
| •     | SECO-S7  |
| The F | RS485 interface is electrically isolated up to 50 V to ground. |
| 1 x C | AN interface to connect to CAN sensors                         |
| 1x R  | S232 interface for Gateway module (not with Version 2)         |
|       |  |

#### Display and operating unit

| 1 x Operating panel with 9 keys |
|---------------------------------|
| 1 x Graphic display:            |

- Resolution 128 x 64 pixels
- white background illumination

# Relay outputs

| 4 relay outputs (with Version 1) or<br>2 relay outputs (with Version 2) (each with two-way switch) |  |
|--|--|
| Switching values   | 5 A, 250 V AC, 1250 VA max<br>5 A, 220 V DC, 150 W max                                 |
| UL/CSA-rating  | 5 A, 1/6 HP 125, 250 V AC<br>5 A, 30 V DC, 30 W max<br>1 A, 30 V DC - 0.24 A, 125 V DC |

#### mA output

1x mA output (freely configurable):

- Output 0/4 20 mA
- Accuracy < 0.5% FS</li>
- Load max. 500 Ohm
- Temperature drift max. 0.2% / 10°C
- Load monitoring
- Electrically isolated up to 50 V to earth

#### Memory card

1x SD memory card slot for installing an SD memory card (not with Version 2)

DES measuring module 3-electrode cell

| Sensor                 | 3-electrode cell  |
|------------------------|---|
| Principle of operation | Potentiostatic amperometry  |
| Temperature drift      | max. 0.2% / 10k   |
| Linearity error        | < 0,1 %   |
| Calibration            | Pre-calibrated  |
| Upot cell voltage      | 0 – +1000 mV  |
| Upot accuracy          | ± 20 mV   |
| Upot temperature drift | 0.5% / 10K  |
| Input signal           | -7 – 1000 μA  |
| Temperature input      | PT 1000 (optional)  |
| Measuring ranges       | 10, 70, 100, 200, 1000 μA<br>(depending on the type of the<br>DES module) |

#### DES module membrane sensors

| lembrane covered 3-electrode<br>ensor |
|---------------------------------------|
| Potentiostatic amperometry            |
| nax. 0.2% / 10k                       |
| 0,1 %                                 |
| Pre-calibrated                        |
| 7 – 1000 μΑ                           |
| 0, 100, 200, 1000 μA                  |
|                                       |

# pH measuring module for pH value

| Sensor input      | pH single rod electrode |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| Temperature drift | max. 0.2% / 10k         |
| Linearity error   | < 0,1 %                 |
| Calibration       | Pre-calibrated          |
| Input signal      | -1000 – +1000 mV        |
| Input impedance   | 10 <sup>13</sup> Ohm    |

# mV measuring module for Redox

| Sensor input      | Redox single rod electrode |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| Temperature drift | max. 0.2% / 10k            |
| Linearity error   | < 0,1 %                    |
| Calibration       | Pre-calibrated             |
| Input signal      | -1000 – +1000 mV           |
| Input impedance   | 10 <sup>13</sup> Ohm       |

# mS measuring module for conductivity

| Sensor input                | LF325           |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| Temperature measuring range | 0 – +50 °C      |
| Temperature drift           | < 0,2 %         |
| Calibration                 | Pre-calibrated  |
| Linearity error             | < 0,5 %         |
| Measuring range             | 0,1 – 200 mS/cm |

# mA/V measuring module for analog input

| Sensor input      | mA signal or V signal                            |
|-------------------|--|
| Temperature drift | max. 0.2% / 10k                                  |
| Linearity error   | < 0,1 %  |
| Calibration       | Pre-calibrated                                   |
| Measuring ranges  | 0/4 – 20 mA (scalable) or<br>0 – 10 V (scalable) |

### F measuring module for fluoride

| Sensor input      | Fluoride single rod electrode |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| Calibration       | Pre-calibrated                |
| Measuring range   | 0.2 – 20.0 mg/l               |
| Temperature drift | max. 0.2% / 10k               |
| Linearity error   | < 0,1 %                       |

# 3.2.2 Flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5

Housing

| Dimensions (WxHxD) | 215 x 375 x 155 mm |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| Weight             | approx. 1.5 kg     |

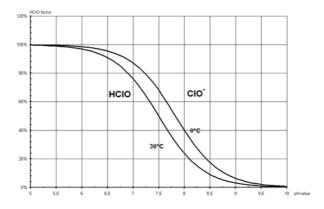
Multi sensor

| Switching point      | 21 l/h +/- 3 l/h |
|----------------------|------------------|
| Switching hysteresis | 2 l/h            |
| Temperature sensor   | PT 1000          |

|                                 | T  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Measured variables              | Free chlorine, chlorine dioxide,<br>ozone, potassium<br>permanganate                     |
| Measuring ranges                | 70, 100, 200, 1000 µA  |
| Typical output signal           | approx. 20 µA/mg/l free chlorine   |
| Measuring system                | Potentiostatic 3-electrode system  |
| Reference electrode             | Silver/Silver chloride/Potassium chloride solution                                       |
| Working electrode               | Platinum   |
| Other materials                 | PVC, PMMA, ABS, ECTFE,<br>PTFE, stainless steel, EPDM,<br>FKM, NBR                       |
| Cable length                    | 650 mm   |
| Electrolyte                     | Potassium chloride solution, 3 mol   |
| Zero point calibration          | by stopping flow rate or<br>dechlorinated sample water typ.<br>zero current approx. 1 μA |
| Response time T <sub>90</sub> : | < 20 sec.  |
| Temperature<br>compensation     | 0 – 50 °C  |
| Storage temperature             | -10°C – +50°C (without<br>electrolyte)   |
| Influence of the pH value       | HOCI curve, operating range<br>pH 5.0 – pH 8.5   |

| Cross-sensitivity        | other oxidation agent: copper-<br>based algaecide  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Water quality            | swimming pool, potable,<br>industrial and process water  |
| Sample water temperature | max. +50 °C  |
| Conductivity             | min. 200 µS/cm   |
| Service life             | Life of the electrolytes in<br>operation approx. 6 months<br>Service life of electrodes in<br>operation approx. 5 years<br>(shortened by poor water quality,<br>e.g. sand, dirt) |

The HOCI curve describes the influence of the pH value on the DEPOLOX $^{\textcircled{B}}$  5.





#### Volumetric flow control

| Flow rate     | approx. 33 l/h (controlled)   |
|---------------|---|
| Control range | 0.2 – 4.0 bar   |
| Back pressure | <ul> <li>non-pressurized version (free drain)</li> <li>pressurized version 1.5 bar</li> </ul> |

#### Connections

| Sample water      | PVC hose 6x3 mm or PE hose<br>6x1 mm |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Thread connection | G1/2" or NPT 1/4"                    |

# 3.2.3 VariaSens flow block assembly

Housing

| Dimensions (WxHxD) | 215 x 375 x 155 mm |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| Weight             | approx. 1.5 kg     |

#### Connections

| Sample water      | PVC hose 6 x 3 mm or PE hose<br>6 x 1 mm |
|-------------------|--|
| Thread connection | G1/2" or NPT 1/4"                        |

#### Flow control valve

| Flow rate     | approx. 33 l/h (controlled)   |
|---------------|---|
| Control range | 0.2 – 4.0 bar   |
| Back pressure | <ul> <li>non-pressurized version (free drain)</li> <li>pressurized version 1.5 bar</li> </ul> |

Sample water

| Water quality            | swimming pool, potable,<br>industrial and process water |
|--------------------------|---|
| Sample water temperature | max. +50 °C   |

Multi sensor

| Switching point      | 21 l/h +/- 3 l/h |
|----------------------|------------------|
| Switching hysteresis | 2 l/h            |
| Temperature sensor   | PT 1000          |

# 3.2.4 Flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool

Housing

| Dimensions (WxHxD) | 215 x 375 x 155 mm |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| Weight             | approx. 1.5 kg     |

Connections

| Sample water      | PVC hose 6 x 3 mm or PE hose<br>6 x 1 mm |
|-------------------|--|
| Thread connection | 1/2"                                     |

#### Flow control valve

| Flow rate     | approx. 33 l/h (controlled)   |
|---------------|---|
| Control range | 0.2 – 4.0 bar   |
| Back pressure | <ul> <li>non-pressurized version<br/>or</li> <li>pressurized version 1.5 bar</li> </ul> |

Sample water

| Water quality            | Swimming pool water |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| Sample water temperature | max. +50 °C         |

Multi sensor

| Switching point      | 21 l/h +/- 3 l/h |
|----------------------|------------------|
| Switching hysteresis | 2 l/h            |
| Temperature sensor   | PT 1000          |

# 3.2.5 Y-style flow through assembly

Y-style flow through assembly pH/mV

| Back pressure            | non-pressurized/pressurized<br>Version (max. 6 bar) |
|--------------------------|---|
| Sample water temperature | max. +50 °C   |

Y-style flow through assembly fluoride

| Back pressure            | Non-pressurized version |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Sample water temperature | max. +50 °C             |

Y-style flow through assembly conductivity

| Back pressure            | pressurized version up to 6 bar |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Sample water temperature | max. +50 °C                     |

# 3.2.6 Electrodes and sensors

DES 3-electrode chlorine measuring cell (glass electrode) for DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool flow block assembly

|                          | r  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Measuring system         | 3-electrode sensor with<br>additional stock of electrolyte<br>salt |
| Principle of operation   | Potentiostatic amperometry   |
| Temperature compensation | 0 – 50 °C  |
| Temperature drift        | max. 0.2 % / 10 K  |
| Measuring range          | 0,1 – max. 20 mg/l   |
| Upot                     | 0 – +1000 mV   |
| Reference electrode      | Silver/Silver chloride/Potassium chloride solution                 |
| Working electrode        | Platinum   |
| Other materials          | Vitreous body  |
| Storage temperature      | -10 – +30 °C   |
| Water quality            | Swimming pool water  |

### pH electrode

| Max. measuring range        | pH 0 – 12             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Operating temperature range | -5 – +80 °C           |
| Storage temperature range   | -5 – +30 °C           |
| Sample water conductivity   | 200 µS/cm – 200 mS/cm |
| Max. operating pressure     | 6 bar                 |

#### ORP electrode

| Max. measuring range        | -1000 – +1000 mV      |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Operating temperature range | -10 – +80 °C          |
| Storage temperature range   | -5 – +30 °C           |
| Sample water conductivity   | 200 µS/cm – 200 mS/cm |
| Max. operating pressure     | 6 bar                 |

#### Fluoride electrode

| Max. measuring range        | 0.2 – 20 mg/l         |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Operating temperature range | 0 – +80 °C            |
| Storage temperature range   | -5 – +30 °C           |
| Sample water conductivity   | 200 µS/cm – 200 mS/cm |
| Max. operating pressure     | non-pressurized       |

# Conductivity electrode

| Measuring system            | 4-electrode system LF325     |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Principle of operation      | 4 conductor measurement      |
| Operating temperature range | -5 – +100 °C                 |
| Storage temperature range   | -5 – +50 °C                  |
| Cell constant               | 0.48 cm <sup>-1</sup> ±1.5 % |
| Max. operating pressure     | 10 bar                       |

#### Membrane sensor



#### Please note

For further technical data please refer to instruction manual "Membrane sensor for free chlorine FC2" and "Membrane sensor for total chlorine TC3" for each membrane sensor.

Membrane sensor for chlorine dioxide CD7

| Measured variables                            | Chlorine dioxide, selective compared to $Cl_2$ , $Br_2$ , $H_2O_2$ , cross-sensitivity compared to $O_3$ , peracetic acid                                       |
|---|---|
| Power supply                                  | unipolar +12 – 15 VDC, 11 mA  |
| Typical output signal                         | approx. 10 µA per 1 mg/l (ppm) ClO <sub>2</sub>   |
| Measuring system                              | membrane-covered 2-electrode system   |
| Reference electrode                           | Silver / Silver halide / Potassium halide solution  |
| Working electrode                             | Gold  |
| Other materials                               | PVC, silicone rubber, stainless steel   |
| External dimensions                           | Ø 25 mm (1"), length 175 mm (6.9")  |
| Connector cable<br>combination<br>cablelength | 1,2 m   |
| Electrolyte                                   | Diluted potassium halide solution,<br>100 ml bottle, store in a dark place at<br>15°C to 25°C, useable up to 2 years,<br>as long as it is still uniformly clear |
| Measuring range                               | 0,05 – 20 mg/l (ppm) CIO <sub>2</sub>   |
| Chemical analysis                             | DPD 1   |
| Zero point calibration                        | not necessary (zero point signal at<br>0 mg/l ClO <sub>2</sub> = 0 μA)  |
| Response time T <sub>90</sub>                 | < 20 sec.   |
| Influence of the pH<br>value                  | No signal influence up to the CIO <sub>2</sub> stability limit  |
| Temperature compensation                      | internal temperature compensation<br>5 – 45 °C  |
| Storage temperature                           | -10 – +45°C (without electrolyte)   |
| max. pressure                                 | 1.5 bar (only with suitable adapter)  |
| Water quality                                 | all types of water, swimming pool,<br>potable, industrial and process water<br>(limestone deposits may block the<br>membranes)                                  |
| Conductivity                                  | > 1 µS/cm to max. 40 mS/cm  |
| Conductivity                                  | γ η μο/οπιτο max. 40 mo/om  |

| Service life      | Service life of the electrolytes in<br>operation is approx. 6 months,<br>service life of membrane cap is<br>typically 1 year (shortened by poor<br>water quality, e.g., sand, dirt) |
|-------------------|---|
| Cross-sensitivity | ozone, peracetic acid   |
| Selectivity       | compared to chlorine, bromine, hydrogen peroxide  |

#### Membrane sensor for ozone OZ7

| Measured variables            | Ozone, selective compared to $Cl_2$ ,<br>Br <sub>2</sub> , H <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub> , cross-sensitivity<br>compared to ClO <sub>2</sub> , peracetic acid      |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Power supply                  | unipolar +12 – 15 VDC, 11 mA   |
| Typical output signal         | approx. 10 μA per 1 mg/l (ppm) O <sub>3</sub>  |
| Measuring system              | membrane-covered 2-electrode<br>system   |
| Reference electrode           | Silver / Silver halide / Potassium halide solution   |
| Working electrode             | Gold   |
| Other materials               | PVC, silicone rubber, stainless steel  |
| External dimensions           | Ø 25 mm (1"), length 175 mm (6.9")   |
| Connector cable combination   | Cable length 1.2 m   |
| Electrolyte                   | Diluted potassium halide solution,<br>100 ml bottle, store in a dark place<br>at 15°C to 25°C, useable up to 1<br>years, as long as it is still uniformly<br>clear |
| Measuring range               | 0,02 – 10 mg/l (ppm) O <sub>3</sub>  |
| Chemical analysis             | DPD 1 + DPD 3  |
| Zero point calibration        | not necessary (zero point signal at 0 mg/l $O_3 = 0 \ \mu A$ )   |
| Response time T <sub>90</sub> | < 50 sec.  |
| Influence of the pH<br>value  | No signal influence up to the ozone stability limit  |
| Temperature<br>compensation   | internal temperature compensation<br>5 – 45 °C   |
| Storage temperature           | -10 – +45 °C (without electrolyte)   |
| max. pressure                 | 1.5 bar (only with suitable adapter)   |
| Water quality                 | all types of water, swimming pool,<br>potable, industrial and process<br>water (also tenside-laden)<br>(limestone deposits may block the<br>membranes)             |
| Conductivity                  | > 1 µS/cm to max. 40 mS/cm   |
| Flow                          | 6 – 35 l/h, as constant as possible  |

| Service life      | Service life of electrolytes in<br>operation is approx. 6 months,<br>service life of membrane cap is<br>typically 1 year (shortened by poor<br>water quality, e.g., sand, dirt) |
|-------------------|---|
| Cross-sensitivity | Chlorine dioxide, peracetic acid  |
| Selectivity       | compared to chlorine, bromine, hydrogen peroxide  |

# 3.2.7 CAN sensor modules SiDiSens

Housing

| Dimensions (WxHxD) | 40 x 120 x 35 mm (without cable)           |
|--------------------|--|
| Weight             | about 200 – 250 g depending on the version |
| Protection rating  | IP66                                       |

#### Electronics

| Power supply | 24 V DC ± 20%; max. 2 W |
|--------------|-------------------------|
|--------------|-------------------------|

| Operating conditions |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| Ambient temperature  | 0 - 50 °C          |
| Humidity             | < 80 %             |
| Environment          | No direct sunlight |
| Atmospheric pressure | 75 - 106 kPa       |
| Max. altitude        | 2,000 m            |
| Storage temperature  | -20 - 50 °C        |
| Noise emission       | <45 dB             |

#### Interface

CAN bus interface (electrically isolated up to 50V to earth)

### Measurement inputs

| SiDiSens          | рН                          |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Sensor type       | Single-rod electrode for pH |
| Input signal      | -400+400 mV                 |
| Temperature drift | <0.1 %/10K                  |
| Linearity error   | < 0,1 %                     |
| Input impedance   | 10 <sup>13</sup> Ohm        |
| Calibration       | Pre-calibrated              |

#### Connections

| Power supply +<br>CAN bus | Connecting cable with 5-pin M12<br>plug and 5-pin M12 socket for<br>CAN bus terminal plug or to<br>connect other CAN bus<br>components   |
|---------------------------|--|
|                           | $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ \bullet 5 \\ \bullet \\ \bullet \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 3 \\ \bullet \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ \bullet \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ \bullet \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ \bullet \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ \bullet \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ \bullet \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ \bullet \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ \bullet \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ \bullet \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ \bullet \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ \bullet \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 4 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0$ |
|                           | Pin<br>1 screen<br>2 +24V<br>3 0V<br>4 CAN high<br>5 CAN low   |
| Measurement input         | Plug connector compatible with sensor  |

# 3.3 Scope of supply



#### Please note

You will find the order numbers under 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts".

#### 3.3.1 Standard

Depending on the individual order, the scope of supply includes the following:

- Electronic module SFC incl. accessories set and mounting set, comprising:
  - 4x screws Ø 5 mm 4x dowels Ø 8 mm 4x washers 3 multiple seal inserts 2x6 mm 3 multiple seal inserts 4x5 mm 3 reducing sealing rings Ø 8 mm
  - 4 bolts for multiple seal inserts 5 mm
  - 2 bolts for multiple seal inserts 6 mm

# 3.3.2 Options

The order numbers for the flow block assembly are found in 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts".

#### Flow block assembly

- DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 (non-pressurized or pressurized version)
- DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool (non-pressurized or pressurized version)
- · VariaSens (non-pressurized or pressurized version)
- Y-style flow through assemblys (non-pressurized or pressurized version)



#### Please note

The order numbers for the sensor measuring modules are found in 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts".

- pH
- Redox
- · Conductivity
- Fluoride
- Free chlorine (FC2)
- Chlorine dioxide selective (CD7)
- Ozone selective (OZ7)
- Total chlorine (TC3)
- 3-electrode cell DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5
- 3-electrode cell DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool
- 3-electrode cell DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 4 with PT 100
- mA/V input card
- CAN sensor measurement module SiDiSens pH
- CAN sensor measurement module SiDiSens DES



#### Please note

All retrofit kits or sensor measurement modules, except for the SiDiSens measurement modules, are available with or without the process control option.

Sensor measuring module retrofit kit including accessories:

# 3.4 Description

#### 3.4.1 Versions

- SFC The SFC is available in two different versions (see 3.1 "Versions"), each in two voltage variations:
  - 100 240 V AC
  - 24 V DC

Depending on the application, the SFC can be operated either without a flow block assembly (no sensor measuring module) or in connection with a flow block assembly and sensor measuring module.

*Flow block assembly* The flow block assembly is available in different versions:

- DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 non-pressurised version (Sample water drains freely)
- DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5- pressurised version (Sample water is recycled through the system cycle)
- DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool Non-pressurized version
- DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool Pressurized version
- VariaSens non-pressurized version, see "Overview" on Page 35
- VariaSens pressurized version, see "Overview" on Page 35
- Various Y-style flow through assemblys



#### Please note

The selection is customised according to the type of measured values to be recorded.

### Overview

| Non-<br>pressurized<br>version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5                     | Pressurized<br>version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 | Non-<br>pressurized<br>version<br>VariaSens | Pressurized<br>version<br>VariaSens | Non-<br>pressurized<br>version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup><br>Pool | Pressurized<br>version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup><br>Pool | Y-style flow<br>through<br>assembly  |
|--|--|---|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|
|  |  |   |                                     | et al and a second   |  | Example:   |
| A<br>D C B   | D C B  | A<br>C B D                                  | C<br>D B A                          | A<br>DECB  | E<br>D C B   | <sup>1)</sup> W3T171332<br><sup>2)</sup> W3T159950<br><sup>3)</sup> W3T158503<br><sup>4)</sup> W3T163663 |
| A Membrane<br>ozone OZ7<br>B Redox<br>C Fluoride or<br>D pH<br>E 3-electrode |  |   |                                     |  |  |  |

|   |                                | Non-pressurized version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 | Pressurized version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 | Non-pressurized version<br>VariaSens | Pressurized version<br>VariaSens | Non-pressurized version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool | Pressurized version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool | Y flow-through<br>adapter |
|---|--------------------------------|---|---|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|---------------------------|
| Free chlorine,<br>ClO <sub>2</sub> , KMnO <sub>4</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> | 3-electrode<br>measuring cell  | Х   | Х   |                                      |                                  | Х  | Х  |                           |
| Membrane sensor<br>FC1/FC2, TC1/<br>TC3, CD7 or OZ7                     | Membrane-<br>covered electrode | 1x  |   | 2x                                   | 1x<br>(only<br>OZ7<br>or<br>CD7) | 1x   |  |                           |
| рН  | рН 0 – 12                      | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | Х  | X <sup>1)</sup><br>2)     |
| Redox value   | -1000 – +1,000mV               | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | Х  | X <sup>1)</sup><br>2)     |

|   |   | Non-pressurized version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 | Pressurized version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 | Non-pressurized version<br>VariaSens | Pressurized version<br>VariaSens | Non-pressurized version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool | Pressurized version<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool | Y flow-through<br>adapter |
|---|---|---|---|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|---------------------------|
| Fluoride  | 0,20 – 20,00  | Х   |   | Х                                    |                                  | Х  |  | X <sup>4)</sup>           |
| Conductivity  | 0,1 – 200 mS/cm   | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | Х  | X <sup>3)</sup>           |
|   | Temperature<br>(PT 1000) 0 – 50<br>°C                           | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | X  |                           |
| "Multi sensor"  | Flow rate monitor<br>(reed switch)                              | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | Х  |                           |
|   | Earthing  | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | Х  |                           |
| Ball valve<br>Sample water<br>(inlet)                                 | G 1/2" connection   | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | Х  |                           |
| Ball valve<br>Sample water<br>(outlet)                                | G 1/2" connection   |   | Х   |                                      | х                                |  | Х  |                           |
| Preliminary filter  | Recommended<br>when using<br>membrane-<br>covered<br>electrodes | X   |   | x                                    | Х                                | X  |  |                           |
| Check valve   | Glass ball  | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | Х  |                           |
| Volumetric flow control   | free drain  | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | Х  |                           |
| Factory setting:<br>33 l/h<br>Admission<br>pressure:<br>0.2 – 4.0 bar | Max. back<br>pressure: 1.5 bar                                  | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | Х  |                           |
| Drain/extract<br>specimen   |   | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | Х  | X <sup>4)</sup>           |
| Calibration<br>instrument bracket                                     | Calibration aid   | Х   | Х   | Х                                    | Х                                | Х  | Х  |                           |



#### Please note

The "membrane sensor for free chlorine FC1" has been replaced by the "membrane sensor for free chlorine FC2" and the "membrane sensor for total chlorine TC1" has been replaced by the "membrane sensor for total chlorine TC3". The membrane sensors FC1 and TC1 are fully compatible with the SFC.

# 3.4.2 Design

Overall design The SFC unit has a modular structure and can be equipped with various types of sensor measuring modules. Several SFC modules can be installed next to each other on a top-hat rail or using surface mounting brackets.



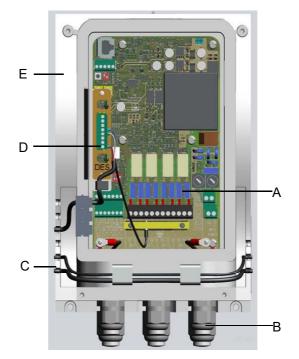
Picture 2 SFC  $Cl_2$  with flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5

- A Flow block assembly  $DEPOLOX^{\mathbb{R}}$  5
- B Sensors
- C Electronic module SFC

*Electronic module SFC* The electronic module SFC consists of a plastic housing (E) with a removable cover.

The housing contains:

- A&C board (A)
- Housing ducts for the cables of the sensor measuring modules (C)
- the cable glands (B)
- the sensor measuring module (D) (optional)



Picture 3 SFC basic with card and cable

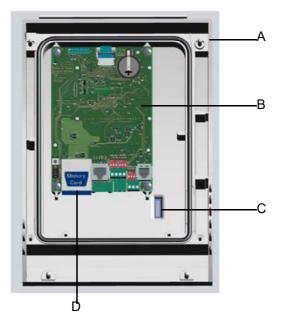
- A A&C Board
- B Cable glands
- C Housing ducts for the cables of the sensor measuring modules
- D Slot for sensor measuring module
- E Housing

3

SFC

The following are integrated into the cover:

- Front panel board with graphic display (B) and interface connections
- Insertable strips (C)
- SD memory card (D)



Picture 4 SFC Operating front (rear)

- A Housing cover
- B Front panel board
- C Insertable strips
- D Memory card

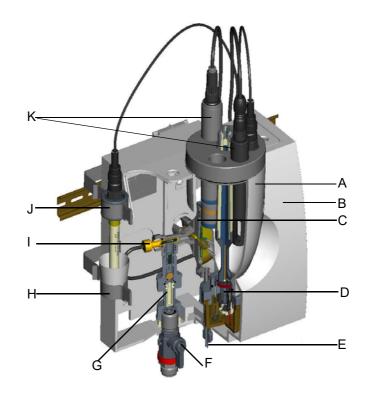
Flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 / VariaSens - non-pressurized or pressurized version - The flow block assembly DEPOLOX  $^{\textcircled{R}}$  5/VariaSens consists of a plastic housing (B) with a removable cover.

The flow block assembly contains the following:

- Cell body with cover (A)
- Flow control valve (C)
- Multi sensor (I)
- Drain (E)
- Fine filter (G) (only when membrane sensors are used)
- Sample water inlet with check valve and ball valve (F)

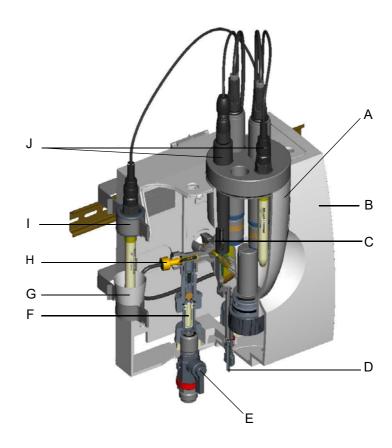
The DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 flow block assembly contains the

3-electrode cell for  $CI_2$ ,  $CIO_2$ ,  $O_3$  or  $KMnO_4$  (D).

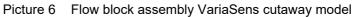


Picture 5 Flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 cutaway model

- A Cell body with coverB Plastic housing
- C Flow control valve
- D 3-electrode cell for  $Cl_2$ ,  $ClO_2$ ,  $O_3$  or  $KMnO_4$ E Drain/extract specimen
- F Ball valve
- G Fine filter
- H Lower clip
- I Multi sensor
- J Upper clip (coated)
- K Sensors



Flow block assembly VariaSens non-pressurized version

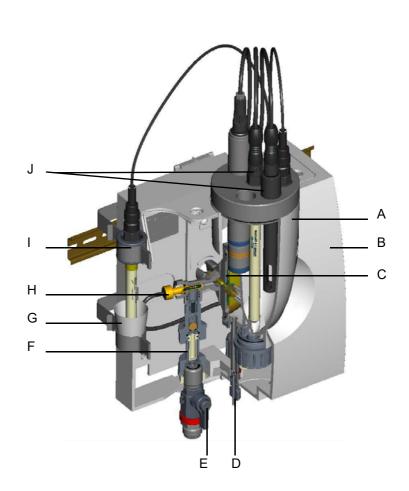


- A Cell body with cover
- B Plastic housing
- C Flow control valve
- D Drain/extract specimen
- E Ball valve
- F Fine filter
- G Lower clip
- H Multi sensor
- I Upper clip (coated)
- J Sensors

Two clips (H/I) are installed in the housing cover. These clips can be inserted into the rear panel of the housing.

The cell body can be equipped with up to five sensors (J) on the non-pressurized version or four sensors on the pressurized version.

#### Flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool non-pressurized version





- A Cell body with cover
- B Plastic housing
- C Flow control valve
- D Drain/extract specimen
- E Ball valve
- F Fine filter
- G Lower clip
- H Multi sensor
- I Upper clip (coated)
- J Sensors

Two clips (G/I) are installed in the housing cover. These clips can be inserted into the rear panel of the housing.

The cell body can be equipped with up to five sensors (J) on the non-pressurized version or four sensors on the pressurized version.

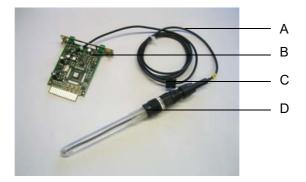
Sensor measuring module The sensor measuring module consists of:

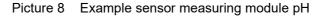
- Sensor (not with 3-electrode cell DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5, mA/V input)
- the sensor cable with water-tight housing duct (not with 3electrode cell DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5, mA/V input)
- Pre-calibrated plug-in card

Due to the modular design, simple installation and configuration of sensor measuring modules in accordance with the plug-and-play principle is possible at any time.

All sensor measuring modules and retrofit kits for Cl<sub>2</sub>, pH, mV, F-... can be plugged into the module slot.

This configuration determines the functionality of the SFC (see 4.2 "Measurement inputs").





- A Sensor cable
- B Plug-in card
- C Housing duct
- D Sensor

# 4. Functions

# 4.1 General

The SFC is a special measuring and control device for use in the treatment of potable water, industrial process water and pool water.

Two different versions of the unit are available (see chapter 3.1), which differ in terms of their inputs and outputs.

Version 1 supports all of the applications described in chapter 3.1. Due to the restricted number of inputs and outputs, version 2 only works in application 3.

Typical applications:

- · Measurement and registration of water parameters
- Flow-controlled potable water chlorination (compound loop)
- Flow-controlled fluroide dosing (compound loop)
- pH single feedback closed-loop control
- Chlorine single feedback closed-loop control
- Quantity-proportional dosing of disinfectants (single feed forward)
- Quantity-proportional dosing of disinfectants with linearization of the actuator (with positioner)

Possible process measurements (only with applications 1 and 2) are:

free chlorine, combined chlorine, total chlorine, chlorine dioxide, potassium permanganate, ozone, pH, Redox, fluoride, conductivity

As an option, two additional control signal inputs can be installed to log flow rate and external setpoint using compound loop or single feed forward.



#### Please note

For the simultaneous recording of process measurements (Cl<sub>2</sub>, pH, ...) and flow-controlled dosing of chemicals (single feed forward, compound loop), it is necessary to use sensor measuring modules with the "Process Control" option (see 4.5 "Applications").

The integrated graphic display displays the following:

- Measured values
- Mode
- Bar graph with limit values
- Setpoint and measuring range
- Description of customized measuring points
- etc.

The menus are easy to use, displayed in plain text and are selected using softkeys.

A 30-day trend enables you to view past measured values of up to two selectable process variables (with SD memory card). Without SD memory card, the trend from 0 - 24 hrs is displayed.

With the SD memory card installed, a measured value file is saved for every month, with the available measured values and the associated time. The file is a text file and can be opened with every editor.

An mA output and an RS 485 bus interface, including a protocol, are available to connect visualization systems. Three different process applications, which reflect the variety of on-site conditions, are integrated into the SFC to simplify commissioning.

Overall Function Possible measured values:

- Free chlorine\*/Cl<sub>2</sub><sup>++</sup>\*, potassium permanganate\*, chlorine dioxide\*, ozone\* (3-electrode cells)
- Total chlorine\*/Combined chlorine\* (membrane sensor)
- pH value
- Redox voltage
- Conductivity\*
- Ozone\* (membrane sensor)
- Chlorine dioxide\* (membrane sensor)
- Free chlorine\* (membrane sensor)
- Fluoride
- · External mA/V inputs
- Temperature measurement
- Actuator feedback

The value of the combined chlorine is calculated from the difference between the total chlorine and the free chlorine (optional). This requires a free chlorine and total chlorine measurement in the same sample water, further information See "Combined chlorine display" on page 117.

\* These measurements are automatically temperature-compensated.

|                           | The Cl <sub>2</sub> <sup>++</sup> value is a pH-compensated chlorine measurement (optional). This requires a pH-measurement in the same sample water as the 3-electrode cell. Measurement values are collected by SiDiSens pH via the CAN bus.           |
|---------------------------|--|
|                           | The graphic display shows the measured data, limit values and setpoints as numeric values, diagrams or a trend line.   |
| Applications              | The control functions available to the SFC are determined by the type of sensor measuring modules, the version of the SFC, and the application selected.   |
| Application 1             | Only measurement with limit switches.  |
| Application 2             | Process measurement with various controller functions.   |
|                           | Single feedback closed loop control  |
|                           | <ul> <li>Compound loop (only with sensor measuring modules with the<br/>Process Control option)</li> </ul>   |
|                           | <ul> <li>Single feed forward (only with sensor measuring modules with<br/>the Process Control option)</li> </ul>   |
| Application 3             | Single feed forward with linearization of the actuator (positioner), no process measurement or measured value display such as Cl <sub>2</sub> , pH,  |
| Controller outputs        | Controller outputs for positioners, dosing pumps, pulse pumps, continuous mA output as well as a dosing contact. CAN actuators are also supported.   |
| Adaption program          | The adaption program automatically determines the control parameters when commissioning the single feedback closed loop control (chlorine, chlorine dioxide, ozone and potassium permanganate modules only).   |
| Safety functions          | The following safety functions are integrated into the control if configured accordingly:  |
|                           | <ul> <li>Safety cut-off if dosing tank signals empty and also if the sample water supply fails</li> <li>Dosing time delay (D1)</li> <li>Alarms</li> </ul>  |
|                           | External controller stop with digital input  |
|                           | <ul> <li>Function "Positioner closed" in the event of power failure<br/>(only with external power supply for positioner)</li> <li>Password protection on two levels</li> </ul>   |
|                           |  |
| Configuration switch-over | The SFC gives the option of either saving internally or loading all necessary operating parameters as a configuration. A maximum of two configurations are possible. These can also be copied to or loaded from the optionally installed SD memory card. |

| Interfaces   | The SFC supports the following links:  |
|--|--|
| RS485 interface  | <ul> <li>CMS 3.0<br/>Visualization software for archiving and display of measured<br/>values on computers with a Windows operating system</li> <li>SECO-S7:<br/>SPS driver for data links to SPS, type S7-300</li> <li>OPC-Server Data Access V2.0:<br/>Server software for Windows operating systems for data links<br/>to visualisation system with OPC client capability</li> <li>ChemWeb-Server:<br/>Measured value archiving and display, remote diagnosis,<br/>remote access with standard browser with Internet and<br/>e-mail capability</li> <li>Process control systems from other manufacturers<br/>(refer to the manual "RS-485 Bus Interface" for description,<br/>bus system, and protocol)</li> </ul> |
| CAN interface  | <ul> <li>The SFC has an integrated CAN interface. This is used for<br/>exchanging data between CAN sensors. (See 4.12 "CAN<br/>interface" for description and bus system).</li> </ul>  |
| Flow block assembly<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 / VariaSens /<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool | These flow block assemblies guarantee a stable measurement signal with   |
|  | robust sensors   |
|  | Constant flow rate with the aid of the flow control valve  |
|  | <ul> <li>Hydrodynamic grit cleaning of the 3-electrode sensor<br/>(only flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5/DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool)</li> </ul>   |
|  | optimum flow around all sensors  |
|  | The multi-sensor integrated into the flow block assembly monitors  |

The multi-sensor integrated into the flow block assembly monitors the constant flow rate of sample water, registers the temperature of the sample water and ensures equipotential earthing over a large surface area (sample water earthing).



#### Please note

As an option, sensors may also be installed via the Yflow-through adapter, or the DEPOLOX  $^{\textcircled{R}}$  4 can be combined with the SFC.

# 4.2 Measurement inputs

In principle, the following types of sensor measuring module or retrofit kits can be installed at the module slot: The sensor measuring modules are only supported in applications 1 and 2:

| DES  | - | for 3-electrode cell  |
|------|---|---|
| DES  | - | for 3-electrode cell with PT 100 temperature option   |
| DES  | - | for free chlorine (FC1/FC2), chlorine dioxide (CD7), ozone (OZ7), and total chlorine (TC1/TC3) membrane sensors |
| DES  | - | for Micro 2000 with PT 1000   |
| DES  | - | for DEOX 2000 with PT 1000  |
| рН   | - | pH value  |
| mV   | - | Redox value   |
| F-   | - | Fluoride value  |
| mS   | - | Conductivity  |
| mA/V | - | Input module  |
|      |   |   |



#### Please note

As 3-electrode cell, DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5, DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool, glass electrodes or DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 4 can be connected. All of these sensor measuring modules are available with the "Process Control" option (PC).

When the unit is switched on, the menus are initialized according to the installed sensor module. Even if the sensor modules are changed at a later date, the user menus are automatically initialized when the unit is switched on. If no sensor measuring module is installed in unit version 1, the message "No measurement available" appears. When delivered from the factory, the SFC is set to application 2. Unit version 2 can only operate in application 3.

The sensor measuring module should be considered as the main measurement, and control functions such as single feed forward, single feedback closed loop control, and compound loop are supported depending on the Process Control option. No controller output is available for application 1.

# 4.2.1 **3-electrode sensor DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 and DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool**

Flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 3-electrode measurement for free Cl<sub>2</sub>, ClO<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>3</sub> or KMnO<sub>4</sub> Potable, industrial and swimming pool water are disinfected almost exclusively by adding chlorine, chlorine dioxide, ozone or potassium permanganate.

With the flow block assembly DEPOLOX $^{\otimes}$  5 with integrated 3-electrode cell, the contents of this disinfectant can be continuously recorded.

A sensor module ("DES" for 3-electrode cells) and terminal strips are used to connect the flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 to the SFC. Various controller functions are available depending on the application selected. The flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 is also used for holding other sensors, such as pH, Redox, fluoride, conductivity or membrane sensors for free chlorine, chlorine dioxide, ozone, total chlorine, or combined chlorine.

A pressurized and non-pressurized version with flow rate control is available as a flow block assembly with integrated 3-electrode cells (see "Overall Function" page 31).

The measuring cell in the flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 is a 3-electrode cell with external potentiostatic control circuit. Working and counter electrodes are designed as half-ring electrodes and consist of a special platinum alloy.

The reference electrode is a silver/silver chloride electrode, which is connected to the sample water via two diaphragms (membranes). The reference electrode with PVC support is immersed into an electrolyte solution.

The electrolyte supply can be replenished during operation if necessary (see7.2 "Maintenance of flow block assembly DEPOLOX® 5").

By connecting the 3-electrode cell to the SFC (DES sensor module for 3-electrode cell), a variable Upot cell voltage can be output between the working electrode (red) and reference electrode (white) via the potentiostatic control circuit. A measuring cell current ( $\mu$ A signal), which is evaluated using the SFC, sets itself proportional to the disinfectant concentration in the sample water.

A special cleaning sand is filled into the flow block assembly, which is circulated by the sample water current and continuously cleans the platinum electrodes.

A multi-sensor is integrated into the flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 to measure the temperature and monitor the flow rate. This is made of a stainless steel housing and is used simultaneously as the sample water grounding (for connection to SFC, see 9. "Wiring Diagrams").

Mode of operation of the 3electrode sensor in the flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5

# Single-rod 3-electrode sensor (single-rod glass electrode)

| Single-rod 3-electrode sensor<br>for the DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool for<br>measuring free chlorine | The disinfection of pool water is carried out almost exclusively through the addition of chlorine. The contents of this disinfectant can be continuously recorded using the 3-electrode single-rod electrode. The single-rod electrode can only be installed in the flow block assembly DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool, in order to guarantee a stable measurement signal. For connecting to the SFC, a sensor measuring module DES for 3-electrode cells must be installed in the SFC. |
|---|--|
| Mode of operation of the single-rod 3-electrode sensor  | The 3-electrode sensor is maintenance-free and has a service life of approx. 2 years. A special cleaning grit, which is filled into the flow block assembly DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool, continuously cleans the electrodes, by swirling constantly around the electrodes. The grit should be changed regularly (see 7. "Maintenance").  |
|   | A multi-sensor is integrated into the flow block assembly DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool to measure the temperature and monitor the flow rate. This is made of a stainless steel housing and is used simultaneously as the sample water grounding.  |
| Adjusting the measurement signal input  | The $\mu$ A-signal input of the flow block assembly DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 is adjusted on the sensor measuring module as follows:  |
|   | The measuring cell current of the flow block assembly DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 ( $\mu$ A current signal) is directly proportional to the disinfectant concentration in the sample water. Depending on how the flow block assembly DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 is used, the $\mu$ A measuring range on the sensor input must be adjusted according to the operating conditions.  |
|   | Please note  |

The setting for the  $\mu A$  measuring range depends on the cell, the disinfectant concentration and the type of disinfectant.

Setting guideline The difference between the  $\mu$ A cell current at 0% disinfectant (or sample water stop) and the maximum measured value must be within the following  $\mu$ A measuring ranges:

- 0 70 µA
- 0 100 μA (factory setting)
- 0 200 µA
- 0 1000 μA



#### Please note

Select a higher  $\mu$ A measuring range for a correspondingly high concentration of disinfectant. With the DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5, a  $\mu$ A value of approx. 30  $\mu$ A per 1 mg/l chlorine should be taken as a guide value. With the single-rod glass electrode, a guide value of approx. 8  $\mu$ A per 1 mg/l chlorine should be taken.

The " $\mu$ A Meas. Range" parameter can be modified in the "Meas. Range" menu of the respective module.

Setting the Upot potential voltage

A variable potential voltage is output between the working electrode and the reference electrode. If a disinfectant other than  $Cl_2$  is used, the potential voltage must be adjusted:

- Chlorine 250 mV (factory setting)
- Chlorine dioxide, ozone, 300 mV potassium permanganate

The "Upot" parameter can be set in the "Meas. Range" menu of the respective module.

Installation notes Ambient conditions

The following must be taken into account when installing the 3electrode measurement:

- Select the sample water extraction point that guarantees a proper mixture of disinfectant and a bubble-free sample water flow.
- · Keep the sample water extraction line as short as possible.



#### Please note

No water carrying lines made of copper piping may be installed. These would distort the measurements.

- If the flow block assembly is not installed right next to the SFC, the measuring cell cable can be lengthened up to no more than 50 m with a three-core, shielded cable. Ready-made extension cables are available for this (see 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts").
- Because the multi sensor is also integrated to measure the temperature and monitor the flow rate in the flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5, it must also be installed with an equal extension. Graded, ready-made cable lengths up to 50 m are also available (see 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts").
- In the SFC, terminal strips must be used with a right-hand direction of connection. Information on connecting the sensor to the sensor module can be found under 9. "Wiring Diagrams".
- The sensor can be calibrated for the first time after approx. two to three hours running-in time.



#### Please note

The calibration must be checked after one day.

#### 4.2.2 pH measurement



The pH value is a measured variable in the field of water treatment. It is a measure of the level of acidity or basicity of a water sample. A glass single-rod measuring sequence is used as sensor.

Picture 1 Sensor measuring module

The pH measuring system consists of:

- pH module with a solidlysoldered connecting cable
- pH glass electrode

The pH module must be installed in the module slot of the SFC. Various controller functions are available depending on the application selected.

The electrode can be installed in the flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5/DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool/VariaSens or in a separate Ystyle flow through assembly.

Installation notes Ambient conditions

> The following must be taken into account when installing the pH measurement:

- Select the sample water extraction point that guarantees a proper mixture of correction medium and a bubble-free sample water flow.
- This does not require a certain flow rate.
- The electrode must be immersed at least 2 cm deep into the sample water.
- If the pH electrode is not installed right next to the SFC, extension cables with plug connectors are available (see 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts").
- If an extension cable is used (max. 50 m), an impedance converter (see 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts") must be used on the electrode in order to guarantee a stable measuring signal.

Installing the pH sensor in the flow block assembly

- Install the pH sensor in the corresponding opening on the flow 1 block assembly in the Y-style flow through assembly.
- 2 Screw the sensor cable marked "pH" into place.
- The pH sensor can be calibrated for the first time after approx. 3 two to three hours running-in time.

Please note

The calibration must be checked after one day.

# SFC



4.2.3

The Redox voltage is a measured variable in the field of water treatment. The electrical potential present during the Redox reaction is described as Redox voltage and represents the oxidation strength of a system. The Redox electrode is a single-rod electrode including silver/silver chloride reference system, which is very robust and low-maintenance.

Picture 2 Sensor measuring module

The Redox measuring system consists of:

- mV module with a solidly soldered connecting cable
- Redox electrode

**Redox Measurement** 

The mV-module must be installed in the module slot of the SFC. Various controller functions are available depending on the application selected.

The electrode can be installed in the flow block assemblies  $DEPOLOX^{@} 5/DEPOLOX^{@} Pool/VariaSens$  or in a separate Y-style flow through assembly.

Installation notes Ambient conditions

The following must be taken into account when installing the Redox measurement:

- Select the sample water extraction point that guarantees a proper mixture of disinfectant and a bubble-free sample water flow.
- This does not require a certain flow rate.
- The electrode must be immersed at least 2 cm deep into the sample water.



#### Please note

No water carrying lines made of copper piping may be installed. These would distort the measurements.

- If the Redox electrode is not installed right next to the SFC, extension cables with plug connectors are available (see 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts").
- If an extension cable is used (max. 50 m), an impedance converter (see 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts") must be used on the electrode in order to guarantee a stable measuring signal.

Installing the mV sensor in the flow block assembly 1 Install the mV sensor in the corresponding opening on the flow block assembly in theY-style flow through assembly.

SFC

- 2 Screw the sensor cable marked "mV" into place.
- **3** The mV sensor can be calibrated for the first time after approx. two to three hours running-in time.

#### Please note

The calibration must be checked after one day.

#### 4.2.4 Fluoride Measurement



The fluoride measurement with fluoride ionic-sensitive electrodes is used to continuously determine the fluorides in solutions. The measurement of the fluoride ions concentration is selective, i. e. the remaining electrodes do not disturb even at a high surplus. The measurement medium's pH value must be between pH 4 and pH 8.5, in order to obtain a correct result.

#### Picture 3 Sensor measuring module



#### Caution!

Quick and repetitive changes in temperature cause the potential to change continuously, which can lead to electrode malfunction.



#### Please note

The reference system is filled with electrolyte. The integrated storage tank must be replenished routinely with the solution.

The fluoride measuring system consists of:

- · Fluoride module with a solidly soldered connecting cable
- Fluoride single-rod electrode

The fluoride module must be installed in the module slot of the SFC. Various controller functions are available depending on the application selected.

The electrode can be installed in the flow block assemblies DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5/DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool/VariaSens or in a separate Y-style flow through assembly.

Installation notes Ambient conditions

The following must be taken into account when installing the fluoride measurement:

- Select the sample water extraction point that guarantees a proper mixture of disinfectant and a bubble-free sample water flow.
- This does not require a certain flow rate.
- The electrode must be immersed at least 2 cm deep into the sample water.



#### Please note

No water carrying lines made of copper piping may be installed. These would distort the measurements.

- If the fluoride electrode is not installed right next to the SFC, extension cables with plug connectors are available (see 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts").
- If an extension cable is used (max. 50 m), a impedance converter (see 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts") must be used on the electrode in order to guarantee a stable measuring signal.
- Because the fluoride electrode has a connecting cable, the impedance converter must be installed between the electrode extension cable and the connecting cable.

#### Commissioning

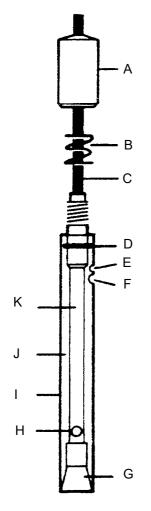


#### Please note

The fluoride-sensitive membrane of the electrode is protected by a rubber cap. The rubber cap must be removed before the electrode is immersed in the sample water.

To prevent damages, do not touch the membrane.

#### Preparing the electrodes



- 1 Screw the injection cap on the bottle with the fill solution.
- **2** Pour a little fill solution into the filling hole. Then rinse the electrode to wet the electrode body O-ring.
- **3** Press on the electrode cap until the electrode body is loosened slightly from the epoxy cover so that the cone is also wet.
- 4 Release the cap. If the protective cover does not immediately return to its original position, check whether the O-ring is wet enough and repeat steps 2 and 3 until the protective cover returns.
- **5** The electrode must be filled with electrolyte up to the filling hole.
- **6** Before use, the electrode should be placed in a 100 mg/l fluoride solution at pH 7 for approx. 24 hours (e.g. calibration solution).
- A cap
- B spring
- C cable
- D O-ring
- E vent
- F filling hole
- G cone
- H reference element
- I protective cover
- J chamber for fill solution
- K electrode body



#### Please note

Installing the fluoride sensor in the flow block assembly

1 Install the fluoride sensor in the corresponding opening on the flow block assembly in the Y-style flow through assembly.

The filling hole or vent must remain open. The solution in the

2 Connect the sensor to the sensor cable marked "F-".

electrode may not be contaminated by other liquids.

**3** The fluoride sensor can be calibrated for the first time after approx. two to three hours running-in time.



#### Please note

The calibration must be checked after one day.

4.2.5

The conductivity measurement represents a composite parameter for the total mineralization of water. This measurement depends heavily on the temperature, therefore a temperature sensor is integrated directly into the conductivity sensor. The measured value is always indicated in relation to a certain temperature value. The international reference temperatures are 20°C or 25°C.

Picture 4 Sensor measuring module

**Conductivity Measurement** 

The conductivity measuring system consists of:

- Conductivity module with terminal strip
- Conductivity sensor
- · Electrode support for pressurized/non-pressurized assembly

The LF325 conductivity measuring cell consists of a 4-electrode system with integrated temperature sensor. The electrodes are made of graphite and are therefore very robust and abrasion-resistant. The cell constant is  $0.48 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ .

The conductivity module must be installed in the module slot of the SFC. Various controller functions are available depending on the application. The electrode can be installed in the flow block assemblies DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5/DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool/DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 4 or in a separate Y-style flow through assembly. The electrode support must also be used if installing the pressurized version in the flow block assembly.

#### Installation notes Ambient conditions

The following must be taken into account when installing the conductivity measurement:

- Select the sample water extraction point that guarantees bubble-free sample water flow.
- This does not require a certain flow rate.
- The electrode must be immersed at least 4 cm deep into the sample water.
- If the conductivity electrode is not installed right next to the SFC, the measuring cell cable can be lengthened up to no more than 50 m using a connecting box and a six-core, shielded cable (see 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts").
- The terminal strips must be used with a right-hand direction of connection. Information on connecting the sensor to the conductivity module can be found in the wiring diagrams in 9. "Wiring Diagrams".

#### Installing the conductivity sensor in the flow block assembly

- 1 Install the conductivity sensor in the corresponding opening on the flow block assembly in the Y-style flow through assembly.
- **2** Use the appropriate accessories if installing the pressurized version.
- **3** Plug in the corresponding sensor cable.
- 4 Then calibrate immediately.

#### 4.2.6 Membrane sensors

Membrane sensors

- The following alarm messages are configurable:
  - Free chlorine FC2
  - Chlorine dioxide CD7
  - Ozone OZ7
  - Total chlorine TC3

The membrane measuring system consists of the sensor module ("DES" for membrane sensors) including terminal strips and the sensors. The module must be installed in the module slot of the SFC. Various controller functions are available depending on the slot and application selected.

All membrane systems are equipped with an integrated temperature sensor and therefore deliver a temperaturecompensated output signal.

Picture 5 Membrane sensor

#### Please note

For a better overview, the commissioning, maintenance, troubleshooting, de-bugging and storage is listed here for each sensor.

For further information and the start-up please refer to instruction manual "membrane sensor for free chlorine FC2" and "membrane sensor for total chlorine TC3" for each membrane sensor.



Installation notes Ambient conditions

The following must be taken into account when installing the membrane sensors:

- Select the sample water extraction point that guarantees a proper mixture of disinfectant and a bubble-free sample water flow.
- · Keep the sample water extraction line as short as possible.



#### Please note

No water carrying lines made of copper piping may be installed. These would distort the measurements.

- The membrane sensors can only be used in the DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup>
   5, DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool or VariaSens flow block assembly, which maintains the constant sample water flow.
   Because not all membrane sensors are designed for pressurized operation, the operating conditions and the sensor technical data must be reviewed and coordinated before the sensors are installed in pressurized flow block assemblies!
- If the membrane sensor is not installed right next to the SFC, the measuring cell cable can be lengthened up to no more than 50m with a three-core, shielded cable. Ready- made extension cables up to 15 m are available for this (see 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts").

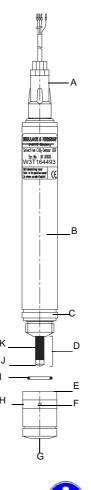
The terminal strips with a right-hand direction of connection must be used. Information on connecting the sensor to the sensor module can be found in the wiring diagrams (see 9. "Wiring Diagrams").

#### Membrane sensor for chlorine dioxide CD7

The CD7 membrane sensor enables the chlorine dioxide content in all types of water to be determined selectively, also in high-purity water (LF >  $1\mu$ S/cm), without cross-sensitivity to chlorine, bromine and hydrogen peroxide, but with cross-sensitivity to ozone and peracetic acid. The sensor demonstrates no pH value dependency (see "Technical data") and is therefore very suitable for water with various pH values.

Commissioning





# Caution!

The electrode fingers (D) and membranes (G) are extremely sensitive! Do not touch, soil or damage! Before unscrewing the filled membrane cap (E), push the elastomer seal (H) to one side to permit the inflow of air through the vent (F) underneath it (at the cap label)! Otherwise, the membrane (G) may be damaged due to the development of underpressure. Do not remove the light yellowish-gray deposit of the reference electrode (K) or wipe it in the direction of the gold working electrode (J)! Flush eyes and skin immediately with water after contact. Rinse away spilled electrolyte with water.

- **1** Screw off the membrane cap (E) from the electrode shaft (B) and fill with the included gel electrolyte up to the top brim.
- 2 Rub gold working electrode (J) with the included lapping paper (special emery). To do this, lay the lapping paper on a paper towel, take hold of a corner, and using the tip of the verticallyheld electrode shaft (B), slide it once or twice over the rough side of the lapping paper.
- **3** Check whether the elastomer seal (H) completely closes the valve opening (F).
- 4 Then screw the filled membrane cap (E) slowly (by hand) back onto the the electrode shaft (B).

#### Please note

As the excess electrolyte escapes through the valve opening (F) under the elastomer seal (H), do not clamp it shut and do not press it onto the elastomer seal (H).

- 5 Rinse off the escaped electrolyte with water. Please note The membrane cap (E) must be completely screwed (hand-tight) onto the electrode shaft (B), so that no gap remains between the two! After a run-in period of about one hour, the membrane sensor is sufficiently run-in for an initial calibration to take place. Calibration should be repeated after one day. Inserting into the flow-through 1 Insert the membrane sensor through the cover into the flowthrough adapter until it is resting mechanically on the inflow adapter mating connector and therefore receives a good flow. It may be necessary to turn the flow-through adapter cover to set it in the right position relative to the inflow mating connector. Please note sensor. They interfere with the measurement! **2** Connect the measuring signal cable to the measuring device. Please note If the measuring sensor is installed this way, it will function reliably for approx. three to six months. 1 Lift elastomer seal (H) and only then screw off the membrane cap (E). 2 Wash the membrane cap (E) and electrode finger (D) with clean (distilled) water. 3 Carefully dry the electrode finger (D) with absorbent paper. 4 Leave the membrane cap (E) to dry in a dust-free place.
  - 5 Screw the dry membrane cap (E) loosely onto the electrode shaft (B).

#### Please note

The membrane (G) may not touch the gold working electrode (J).

Restarting

See "Commissioning".

Remove air bubbles from the membrane by lifting the membrane

Storing the membrane sensor

Trouble-shooting and debugging when the measuring signal is too low or irregular



1 Remove air bubbles on the membrane (G) by lifting the membrane sensor; air bubbles prevent the chlorine dioxide from diffusing through the membrane (G) and distort the measurement!

#### Please note

Air bubbles on the electrode shaft (B) and the membrane cap (E) are normal following the initial startup and subsequent startups and they disappear by themselves after one or two days.

2 Replenish electrolyte. Open membrane sensor. To do this, push the elastomer seal (H) to the side so that air can flow in through the valve opening (F), and only then screw off the membrane cap (E). Pour out the electrolyte. Wash the electrode finger (D) and the membrane cap (E) with clean (distilled) water and dry with a clean paper towel.

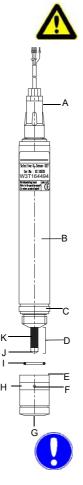


#### Please note

For further procedures, see "Commissioning". If the membrane sensor's measuring signal is still too low or irregular, a new membrane cap (E) must be used. The membrane sensor then requires a run-in time of approx. one hour, before a calibration can be carried out.

Membrane sensor for ozone OZ7 The OZ7 membrane sensor enables the ozone content in all types of water to be determined selectively, also in high-purity water (LF >  $1\mu$ S/cm), without cross-sensitivity to chlorine, bromine and hydrogen peroxide, but with cross-sensitivity to chlorine dioxide and peracetic acid. The sensor demonstrates no pH value dependency (see "Technical data") and is therefore very suitable for water with various pH values.

#### Commissioning



# Caution!

The electrode fingers (D) and membranes (G) are extremely sensitive! Do not touch, soil or damage! Before unscrewing the filled membrane cap (E), push the elastomer seal (H) to one side to permit the inflow of air through the vent (F) underneath it (at the cap label)! Otherwise, the membrane (G) may be damaged due to the development of underpressure. Do not remove the light yellowish-gray deposit of the reference electrode (K) or wipe it in the direction of the gold working electrode (J)! Flush eyes and skin immediately with water after contact. Rinse away spilled electrolyte with water.

- **1** Screw off the membrane cap (E) from the electrode shaft (B) and fill with the included gel electrolyte up to the top brim.
- 2 Rub gold working electrode (J) with the included lapping paper (special emery). To do this, lay the lapping paper on a paper towel, take hold of a corner, and using the tip of the verticallyheld electrode shaft (B), slide it once or twice over the rough side of the lapping paper.
- **3** Check whether the elastomer seal (H) completely closes the valve opening (F).
- 4 Then screw the filled membrane cap (E) slowly (by hand) back onto the electrode shaft (B).

#### Please note

As the excess electrolyte escapes through the valve opening (F) under the elastomer seal (H), do not clamp it shut and do not press it onto the elastomer seal (H).

| 1 |                  |
|---|------------------|
|   |                  |
|   | Y.               |
|   | $\mathbf{\cdot}$ |

**5** Rinse off the escaped electrolyte with water.

#### Please note

The membrane cap (E) must be completely screwed (hand-tight) onto the electrode shaft (B), so that no gap remains between the two! When the sensors are first commissioned, it is necessary to operate the sensors for two or three hours in water with an ozone content of >0.2 mg/l. The sensor needs this time to activate itself. Following a run-in time of approx. three hours, a first calibration can take place. Calibration should be repeated after one day.

Inserting into the flow-through adapter

Storing the membrane sensor



# mating connector and therefore receives a good flow. It may be necessary to turn the flow-through adapter cover to set it in the right position relative to the inflow mating connector.

1 Insert the membrane sensor through the cover into the flow-

through adapter until it is resting mechanically on the inflow

#### Please note

Remove air bubbles from the membrane by lifting the membrane sensor. They interfere with the measurement!

2 Connect the measuring signal cable to the measuring device.

#### Please note

If the measuring sensor is installed this way, it will function reliably for approx. three to six months.

- 1 Lift elastomer seal (H) and only then screw off the membrane cap (E).
- **2** Wash the membrane cap (E) and electrode finger (D) with clean (distilled) water.
- 3 Carefully dry the electrode finger (D) with absorbent paper.
- 4 Leave the membrane cap (E) to dry in a dust-free place.
- 5 Screw the dry membrane cap (E) loosely onto the electrode shaft (B).

# F

Please note

The membrane (G) may not touch the gold working electrode (J).

Restarting

See chapter "Commissioning".

Trouble-shooting and debugging when the measuring signal is too low or irregular



1 Remove air bubbles on the membrane (G) by lifting the membrane sensor; air bubbles prevent the ozone from diffusing through the membrane (G) and distort the measurement!

#### Please note

Air bubbles on the electrode shaft (B) and the membrane cap (E) are normal following the initial startup and subsequent startups and they disappear by themselves after one or two days.

2 Replenish electrolyte. Open membrane sensor. To do this, push the elastomer seal (H) to the side so that air can flow in through the valve opening (F), and only then screw off the membrane cap (E). Pour out the electrolyte. Wash the electrode finger (D) and the membrane cap (E) with clean (distilled) water and dry with a clean paper towel.

#### Please note

For further procedures, see "Commissioning". If the membrane sensor's measuring signal is still too low or irregular, a new membrane cap (E) must be used. The membrane sensor then requires a run-in time of approx. one hour, before a calibration can be carried out.

#### 4.2.7 mA/V input module

The mA/V input module is used for connecting sensors or external measurements with mA or voltage output signal. 0/4 - 20 mA signal or 0 - 10 V input voltage are possible.

Various controller functions are available depending on the application selected. If the mA/V module is used with the "Process Control" option (PC), compound loop and single feed forward are also available.

As measured value display, the unit and display format can be freely selected in the menu.

#### 4.2.8 Temperature measurement

The A&C board of SFC has a temperature measurement for connecting a PT1000 sensor (multi-sensor). This temperature measurement is used for temperature compensation of the "DES" module and pH measurement. The temperature is shown on the main display and can be calibrated if necessary. The measuring range is  $0 - 50^{\circ}$ C. The unit may be adjusted to °F.



#### 4.2.9 mA inputs of the A&C boards

The A&C board integrates two mA inputs (mA 1 and mA 2) for recording process parameters.

- *mA input 1* Used for recording the flow rate signal as 0 20 mA or 4 20 mA signal.
- *mA input 2* Used for recording an external setpoint value or dosing factor as 0 20 mA signal

Both input signals can be freely scaled in the menu (see Inputs/ Outputs menu).

Special Function When measuring the combined chlorine, it is also possible to record the measured value "free chlorine", which is required for combined chlorine measurement, via mA input instead of CAN bus. However, single feed forward and compound loop, with recording of the flow rate, will then no longer be supported by SFC.

#### 4.2.10 CAN sensor measurement module SiDiSens

SiDiSens is an external CAN bus component which can be used to add a measurement input to the SFC. Using the integrated connecting cable the module is directly plugged into SFC. The M12 socket in the SiDiSens housing is provided for the bus terminal plug included in the scope of delivery.

The relevant sensor is attached to the SiDiSens and the measurement data is transmitted to the SFC via the CAN bus.

If a SiDiSens is connected to the SFC, the associated measurement is automatically detected upon start-up of the device and the necessary menus for parameterisation are enabled. Assignment to mA output and entry of limit values is possible. The measurement values are presented as a line diagram and stored on the SD memory card.

The status LED in the SiDiSens housing provides information on the current status.

While the connection is being established the LED either flashes red/green quickly or green slowly. As soon as communication is established with the SFC it lights up a continuous green. A CAN bus fault is indicated by a red illuminated LED.

The SiDiSens is designed as a wall mounting module. Using an optionally available assembly set it can also be fixed to a top-hat rail.



The following version is available:

• SiDiSens pH for measuring and compensating the pH value for a Cl<sub>2</sub>++ measurement

#### Please note

The SiDiSens is only suitable for connecting to a SFC with firmware version 3.0 and above.

Only one SiDiSens may be connected to the SFC.

The SiDiSens is provided for the following applications:

Cl<sub>2</sub>++ measurement

The pH dependency of the chlorine measurement is compensated if the pH value fluctuates within the range of pH 6.00 - pH 8.75. This function is only guaranteed to a max. 10 mg/l free chlorine.

If free chlorine measurement is enabled in SFC, a measurement cell DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 is available and a SiDiSens pH is connected via the CAN interface, the Cl<sub>2</sub>++ measurement is automatically activated on system start-up. In the "measuring range - sensor type" menu there is also the option of selecting the normal Cl<sub>2</sub> measurement.

Please note

The SiDiSens measurement value displayed in the SFC is only used to compensate the pH value of the chlorine measurement. No controller function is available for the pH measurement.



# 4.3 Outputs

## 4.3.1 mA output

The mA output of the SFC is electrically isolated and can be parameterized to 0-5 mA, 0-10 mA, 0-20 mA or 4-20 mA in the menu. Any measured value, actuator output Y<sub>out</sub> or temperature can be assigned to the mA output.

# 4.3.2 Relay outputs

The SFC has a maximum of four relays, each with a two-way switch. These switches are assigned various switching tasks depending on the selected application (see 4.5 "Applications"). The corresponding diagrams for the three applications are in the appendix under 9. "Wiring Diagrams". In order to switch larger inductive load, we recommend installing an additional contact such as a contactor or load relay, in order to guarantee the contacts have a longer service life.

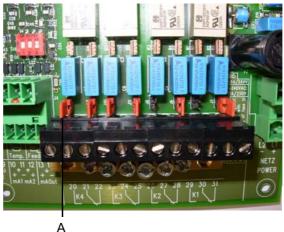
Protection of the relay contacts of alarm and control outputs is provided at the factory using RC circuits. These provide radio interference suppression for inductive loads such as pumps, motors, etc.

Connection of small loads When connecting small loads to the mains voltage, e.g. contactors or positioners with low power consumption (e.g. V10K), the closed-circuit current via the RC circuits can suffice to activate the loads (humming of the positioner, contactor is not deactivated, etc.). In this case, the plug-in jumpers of the relevant contacts should be removed to deactivate the RC circuits.

1

| K1 | J6/J7  |
|----|--------|
| K2 | J8/J9  |
| K3 | J10/J1 |

K4 J12/J13



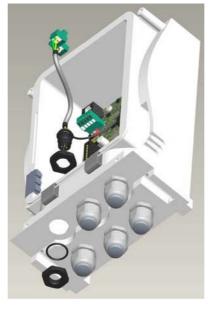
Picture 6 Connection diagram

A Plug-in jumpers

# 4.4 SFC CAN retrofit kit

A retrofit kit with CAN bus socket (M12, 5-pin) and connecting cable is available as an accessory to directly connect the CAN sensor measurement module SiDiSens to the SFC electronics module.

Integration is described in the supplied conversion instructions.



Picture 7 SFC CAN retrofit kit

# 4.5 Applications

The configuration of the system is determined by:

- Version of the SFC
- The required measurement and control parameters
- · The installed components
- the selection of the suitable application
- the type of sensor module installed

The SFC provides the option to customize the system to the various on-site systems using three integrated applications.

- Factor setting of version 1 = application 2
- Factor setting of version 2 = application 3

The connections are determined by selecting the applications 1, 2 or 3. Factory settings are always set for the respective application. However, these can be customized to the respective system.



#### Caution!

The defined application 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 must be entered the first time the device is switched on (see 5.3.9 "Switching the device on".

It is then not possible to change this for the defined configuration, otherwise the incorrect controller outputs are activated.

The three available applications 1, 2 and 3 are described below.

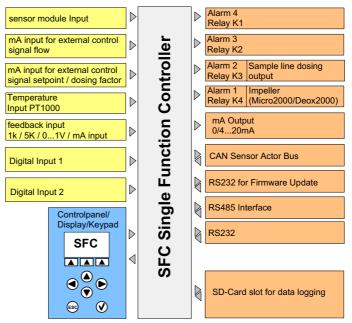
Λ

# SFC

# 4.5.1 Application 1 - Process measurement

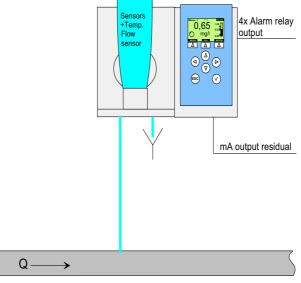
With application 1, the SFC operates exclusively as a measuring device. A maximum of four freely configurable alarm relays are available. The type of measurement is determined by the type of the sensor measuring module. Controller outputs are not supported in this application.

Picture 8 gives an overview of the available inputs and outputs of the SFC.





Picture 9 shows a sample implementation of application 1 as individual process measurement. The measured value can be forwarded via mA signal or CAN bus to a higher-level controller.

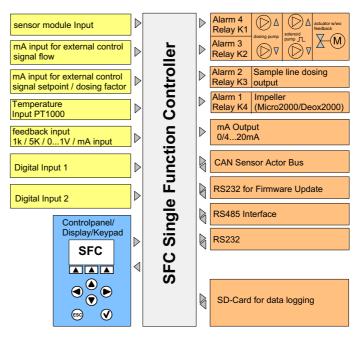


Picture 9 Process measurement

### 4.5.2 Application 2

In application 2, the SFC works as a measuring device and as a control device. Various controller modes can be selected depending on the installed sensor measuring module:

- Sensor measuring module without "Process Control" option (PC)
  - -> Single feedback closed loop control
- Sensor measuring module with "Process Control" option (PC)
   -> Single feedback closed loop control
  - -> Compound loop
  - -> Single feed forward



Picture 10 Application 2

Controller functions in Application 2 The following integrated control modes are available for selection:

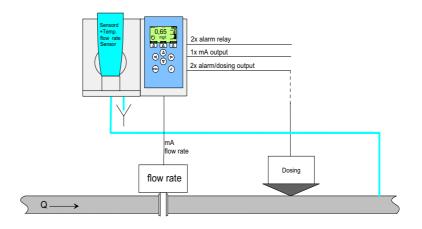
- · Single feed forward (with Process Control option)
- Single feedback closed loop control
- Compound loop (with Process Control option)
- Single feed forward with linearization of the positioner output, with actuators with feedback output, (max. 11 calibration points) (with Process Control option)

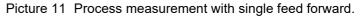
Online measurements can be transmitted direct from the SFC by means of a sensor measuring module and from external measuring systems via mA input signal. External control signals, such as flow rate and external setpoint, are recorded by two integrated mA inputs. The SFC system can record a main measurement and two external control signals. In addition, measuring inputs for temperature, actuator feedback and two digital inputs are available.

### 4.5.2.1 Single feed forward with process measurement

This operating mode controls the quantity-proportional dosing of disinfectants. The single feed forward with process measurement is only supported with sensor measuring modules with the Process Control option.

A typical application is simple flow-controlled potable water chlorination, as shown in the following figure.





Required module configuration:

MOD1 - To record the measured value

Input signals:

- · Module 1 measured value recording
- Flow rate measurement (0/4 20mA) scalable
- second control variable is possible via sensor measuring module
- internal or external dosing factor (0/4 20 mA)

The following controller outputs are possible:

- · Dosing pump
- Pulse pump
- Positioner with feedback 1kOhm/5kOhm/0 –1 V/mA signal
- mA analog output

How the ratioThe flow rate is recorded and the dosing capacity adjustedcontrol worksproportionally to the flow rate using the flow rate sensor with linearmA/V output signal.

On the settings for the flow rate signal see menu "Inputs/Outputs" - "Flow Wq".



#### Please note

If the measuring range end value of the flow meter is not identical with the actual maximum flow rate, a factor for adjusting the flow rate signal should be input in the menu "Inputs/Outputs" - "Flow Wq".

For example:

Measuring range flow meter = 5000 l/h / max. flow rate = 2500 l/h => factor = 5000: 2500 = 2,0

The ratio between control variable and dosing output is determined by the internal dosing factor (control "Dos.Fact.Source" = internal), or it can also be set by an external mA/V input signal (Dos.Fact.Source = external).

You can switch between internal and external dosing factor (DF) via the digital input ("Dos.Fact.Source" = "external with DI2" or "internal with DI2").

It is possible that a second control variable "Measured Value X" (measured value from module 1) will have a proportional or inverse proportional influence on the single feed forward ("X-direction" = direct / inverse variable).

The second control variable X is activated, if the parameter "Control Variable2" is set to "Measured Value X" (second control variable deactivated by the "Off" setting (factory setting).

The amplification factor for this parameter is defined by the X-factor input parameter.

The controller output is calculated in this operating mode as follows:

#### Yout = Wq x DF x (X-measured value x X-factor) x Yout-factor

| Wq<br>DF         | Control variable 1 flow rate in % set dosing factor in %  |
|------------------|---|
| X-measured value | Control variable 2 measured value sensor measuring module 1 in %  |
| X factor         | Amplification factor for X measured value   |
| Yout             | Determined controller output value %  |
| Yout factor      | This factor gives the option of increasing the dosing<br>output by a dosing factor DF of 100 % when the<br>setpoint value is not reached, increase the dosing<br>output.<br>Setting range: 1.0– 4.0<br>Factory setting: 1.0 |



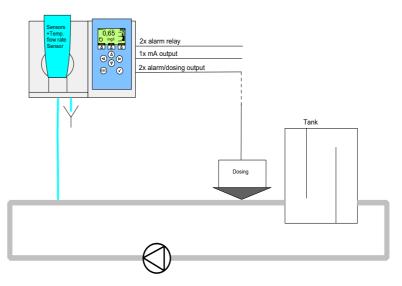
#### Please note

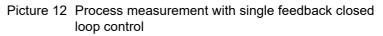
If this factor is increased, there is a danger that the setpoint value will also not be reached with a higher flow rate value, because the Yout value takes the value 100 % prematurely.

# 4.5.2.2 Single feedback closed loop control with process measurement

This operating mode controls the desired measured variable according to the the provided setpoint. Single feedback closed loop control is supported with all sensor measuring modules (with and without the Process Control option).

The following figure shows a typical application of a chlorine single feedback closed loop control for tanks which are circulated in cycles.







# Please note

This controller mode is only available when application 2 is selected.

Required module configuration:

· Sensor measuring module for measured value recording

Input signals:

- · Measured value recording module
- · internal or external setpoint value

The following controller outputs are possible:

- Dosing pump
- Pulse pump
- Positioners with/without feedback (1kOhm/5kOhm/0 1 V/mA signal)
- Continuous
- CAN actuator

How the single feedback closed-loop control works

A PI controller is used to control the measured variables of the sensor measuring module continuously and without control deviation from the desired setpoint. It continuously determines the required dosing output.

The setpoint can be set within the measuring range (at "Setpoint Source" = internal).

Xp and Tn are control parameters to be set. They can also be automatically determined via the integrated adaption during a chlorine control.

An external setpoint from 0 - 100 % can be provided via the mA/V input signal ("Setpoint Source" = external). You can switch between internal and external setpoint via the digital input ("Setpoint Source" = "external with DI3" or "internal with DI3").

The control direction can be selected with the parameter "Control Direction" = direct or inverse (e.g. direct = chlorination, inverse = dechlorination).

The controller output is calculated in this operating mode as follows:

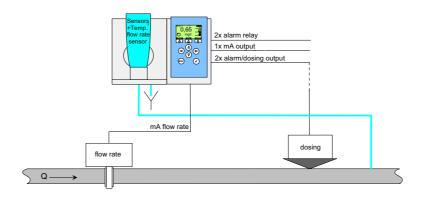
| Yout | = | Үрі | = | ek | x | Кр | x | (1 | + | t/tn) |  |
|------|---|-----|---|----|---|----|---|----|---|-------|--|
|------|---|-----|---|----|---|----|---|----|---|-------|--|

| t    | Controller cycle time                   |
|------|---|
| tn   | Integral action time                    |
| Кр   | Control amplification 100 / Xp          |
| ek   | Setpoint-actual value control deviation |
| Ypi  | PI controller output variable           |
| Yout | Determined controller output value %    |

# 4.5.2.3 Compound loop with process measurement

The compound loop is a combination of the single feed forward with additional single feedback closed-loop control to correct control deviations. The compound loop is only supported with sensor measuring modules with the Process Control option.

The following figure shows a typical chlorine compound loop as implemented in the treatment of potable water.



Picture 13 Process measurement with compound loop

Required module configuration:

· Sensor measuring module for measured value recording

Input signals:

- Flow rate measurement (0/4 20mA) scalable
- Measured value recording module
- · internal or external setpoint value

Output parameter:

- Dosing pump
- Pulse pump
- Positioner with feedback (1kOhm/5kOhm)
- Continuous
- CAN actuator

*How the combicontrol works* The compound loop outputs a dosing capacity proportional to the flow rate, which does not have a fixed dosing factor proportional to the flow rate as in the single feed forward, but varies depending on demand.

> To detect control deviations, the sensor measuring module records the control variable and a setpoint is specified, which are compared with the integrated single feedback closed-loop control.

The internal setpoint can be set within the measuring range. "Setpoint Source" must be set to "internal". An external setpoint from 0 - 100 % can be provided via the mA/V input signal. This requires that "Setpoint Source" = "external". You can switch between internal and external setpoint via the digital input. The "Setpoint Source" must be set to "external with DI3" or "internal with DI3".

The Xp and Tn control parameters of this higher-level single feedback closed-loop control are automatically determined by the integrated fuzzy logic Tconst and Tvar process times to be entered at 100 % flow rate. Because the Tvar process time changes, Tvar, Xp and Tn are continuously updated by the integrated fuzzy logic.

The SFC operates internally with a dosing factor table for 0 - 105 % flow rate. In 5 % intervals, the device determines the required dosing factors automatically during operation based on the corresponding flow rate.. The single feedback closed-loop control corrections are transferred into the dosing factor table during this process. Non-linearities in the control loop are learned this way. This quickly activates the setpoint if flow rate changes occur.

The dosing factor table can be checked in the "Diagnosis" menu. It is possible to delete the dosing factor table and to initialize it with a particular dosing factor (factory setting: 50%), for example, in order to prevent too high dosing factors during commissioning. To do this, the required dosing factor must be entered in the menu "System"-"Reset"-"Dosing Factors".

The control operating mode can be switched between single feed forward and single feedback closed-loop control via digital input.

The control direction can be selected with the parameter "Control Direction" = direct or inverse (e.g. direct = chlorination, inverse = dechlorination)

Behavior in operation Operation after a flow rate change:

The single feedback closed-loop control remains switched off (Ypi stop function) during the disturbance variables (flow rate change, positioner running time, dead time from line lengths). This maintains a stable control, which means the control operates with the dosing factor from the dosing factor table applicable for the new flow rate.

The time the single feedback closed-loop control is switched off is determined by the fuzzy module and is therefore variable ("PI" display in seconds). The parameter "PI shutdown" can be used to define the effect of the disturbance variables or the degree of the flow rate change caused by the YPI stop function.

A larger change in the setpoint deletes all learning meters, in order to reinitialize the dosing rate curve when the setpoint is reached. However, the learned dosing factors remain initially unchanged. Inactivated flow rate values are automatically preassigned a dosing factor.

The single feedback closed-loop control is always active.

Control deviations that occur are quickly offset by the PI single feedback closed-loop control during continuous flow.

A positive jump in the flow rate causes a brief drop below the setpoint due to the running time of the positioner and the dosing delay. Therefore, the PI controller freezes for a brief period ("PI" display in seconds).

A negative jump in the flow rate causes the setpoint to be briefly exceeded due to the running time of the positioner and the dosing delay. Therefore, the PI controller freezes for a brief period ("PI" display in seconds).

The PI controller is not deactivated when the flow rate is continuously rising or falling, so long as the dosing capacity can quickly adjust to these changes. This is true of fast positioner running times and loops without dosing delay.

# Special Functions

- The control direction can be switched.
- Automatic determination of the control parameter using the integrated fuzzy module. The fuzzy module determines the control parameter from the embedded Tconst and Tvar process times.
- The setpoint can be switched between internal and external
- Ypi stop function during a change in control variable
- Control variable Wq available optionally as proportional or indirect proportional as well as factor adjustment
- Smooth switch from compound loop to single feed forward or single feedback closed-loop control via digital input 1, 2 or 3 available

| Yout = Wq              | x (DF <sub>Wq</sub> + ek x Kp x (1 + t/tn)) x Yout factor<br>Ratio Feedback control |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| t<br>tn                | Internal controller cycle time<br>Integral action time                              |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Кр                     | Control amplification 100 / Xp  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ek<br>DF <sub>Wa</sub> | Setpoint-actual value<br>Learned dosing factor for the current flow rate            |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Wq<br>Wq               | Flow rate signal in %   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Yout                   | Determined controller output value %  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Yout factor            | This factor gives the option of increasing the dosing                               |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | output by a dosing factor DF of 100% when the setpoint                              |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | value is not reached increase the dosing output.                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | Setting range: 1.0– 4.0   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | Factory setting: 1.0  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



# Please note

If the Yout factor is increased to >1, there is a danger that the setpoint value will also not be reached with a higher flow rate value, because the Yout value takes the value 100 % prematurely.

Determining the compound loop process times

To adjust the control for compound loop, the Tconst and Tvar process times must bet entered in the parameter menu path. These times refer to control loop dead times, which on the one hand are independent of the control variables, and on the other hand depend proportionally on the control variables.

The constant dead time< Tconst > (independent of control variable) consists of the control variable measurement dead time (measuring dead time) and possible dosing delays.

The variable dead time< Tvar > depends on the current control variable and is entered in the menu at a control variable of 100%.

The following calculation examples apply to the use of the SFC for flow-controlled chlorine dosing with chlorine overfeed correction (potable water control loop).

| Determining the controlvariable<br>independent<br>dead time Tconst | The control variable independent dead time Tconst consists of the measuring dead time and the dosing dead time.   |
|--|---|
| Calculating the measuring dead time                                | Calculation 1:  |
| une  | The sample water is extracted right after the mixture loop and fed to the measuring cell.   |
|  | The sample water dead time depends on the nominal diameter<br>and length of the sample water line and the flow rate to the<br>measuring cell. With the DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 measuring cell, a flow rate<br>of 36 l/h is assumed.  |
|  | The following equation applies to the DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5:   |
|  | t <sub>mw(</sub> DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 <sub>)</sub> = (d <sub>mw</sub> x d <sub>mw</sub> x I <sub>mw</sub> ) : 7,65 (result in min)  |
|  | In general, this equation applies:  |
|  | t <sub>mw</sub> = (4.71 x d <sub>mw</sub> x d <sub>mw</sub> x l <sub>mw</sub> ) : Q <sub>mw</sub> (result in min)   |
|  | <ul> <li>d<sub>mw</sub> = Internal diameter of the sample water line in cm</li> <li>I<sub>mw</sub> = Length of the sample water line in meter</li> <li>Q<sub>mw</sub> = Flow rate to the measuring cell in l/h</li> </ul>   |
| Example  | As a DN6, the sample water line is 10 m long and connected to a DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 chlorine measuring cell.   |
|  | t <sub>mW</sub> = (0.6 x 0.6 x 10) : 7.65 min = 0.47 min, (i.e. approx. 28 sec.)  |
|  | Calculation 2:  |
|  | The sample water is extracted using an additional sample water pump (bypass line).  |
|  | Sample water dead time depends on the flow rate of the sample<br>water pump, nominal diameter of the bypass line and its length up<br>to the sample water branch pipe to the measuring cell.  |
|  | $T_{by} = (4.71 \times d_{by} \times d_{by} \times I_{by}) : Q_{by}$  |
|  | <ul> <li>d<sub>by</sub> = Internal diameter of the bypass line in cm</li> <li>I<sub>by</sub> = Length of the bypass line from the sample water extraction point<br/>to the sample water branch pipe to the cell in m</li> <li>Q<sub>by</sub> = Flow rate to the bypass pump in I/h<br/>(result in min)</li> </ul> |
|  | Check whether the length of the sample water line to the measuring cell can be neglected. If so, establish the sum from calculation 1 and 2.  |

Calculation 3:

The sample water distraction is carried out as in calculation 1 and/ or 2. To increase the exposure time, the sample water is also sent through a delay tank.

The exposure time in the delay tank must be added to the calculated time.

Determining the dosing dead Dosing dead times arise from long dosing lines and positioner running times.

Calculation 1:

Determining the dead time based on dosing line length

The dosing dead time can be determined as follows:

| $t_{dos} = (4.7)^{2}$ | 1 x d <sub>dos</sub> x d | <sub>dos</sub> x I <sub>dos</sub> ) : | : Q <sub>dos</sub> (result in min) |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
|-----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|

| d <sub>dos</sub> | = | Internal diameter of the dosing line in cm |
|------------------|---|--|
| I <sub>dos</sub> | = | Length of the dosing line in m             |
| $Q_{dos}$        | = | Dosing line flow rate in l/h               |

Calculation 2:

If rapid control variable changes are expected in the system, which the dosing equipment cannot adjust to (e.g. positioner running times, dosing pump cycle times), the dosing delay time should be assumed under all circumstances to be half of the positioner running time ty or the cycle time tp.

At a positioner running time of 80 seconds, a value of approx. 40 s should be assumed as the constant dosing delay.

The sum of the measured dead time and the dosing delay is displayed in the< Tconst > menu in minutes.

Determining the control variable dependent Tvar dead time

The control variable dependent Tvar dead time depends on the nominal flow rate, the internal diameter of the line and the distance between where the chlorine is added and the sample water extracted.

# $t_{var} = (d_{pipe} \times d_{pipe} \times I_{pipe}) : (212,3 \times Q_{nom})$ (result in min)

| d <sub>pipe</sub>                      | = | Internal diameter of the pipeline in cm                         |
|--|---|---|
| d <sub>pipe</sub><br>I <sub>pipe</sub> | = | Distance between where chlorine is added and                    |
| P.P.e                                  |   | sample water extracted in m                                     |
| Q <sub>nom</sub>                       | = | Nominal flow rate in m <sup>3</sup> /h (reflects the flow rate, |
|  |   | which is preset for the controller as 100% flow signal)         |

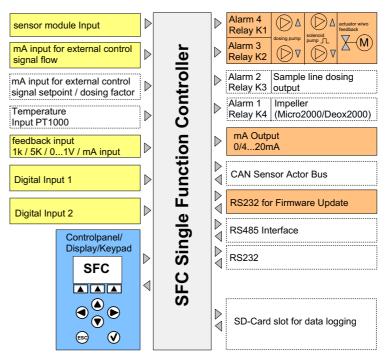
If there are special reaction tanks in the system, they must be treated separately.

Λ

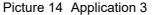
# 4.5.3 Application 3 Single feed forward without process measurement

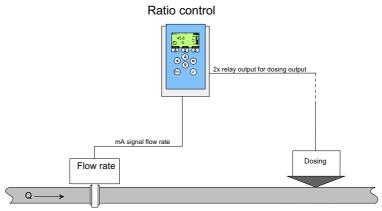
In application 3, the SFC operates exclusively as a single feed forward. The installation of a sensor measuring module is not supported in this application.

The dosing capacity of the connected device is controlled automatically, depending on a measuring signal (external flow rate control signal) and a settable dosing factor. When actuators with feedback are involved, it is possible to adjust the non-linearity using a maximum of 11 calibration points.



...... The features with dotted lines are included as an option





Picture 15 Sample application of SFC as single feed forward

Required module configuration:

Sensor measuring modules for measured value recording, e.g., of  $Cl_2$ , pH, etc., are not supported or evaluated in this application.

Input signals:

• Flow rate measurement (0/4 – 20mA) scalable

The following dosing outputs are possible:

- Dosing pump
- Pulse pump
- Positioner with feedback 1kOhm/5kOhm/0 –1 V/mA signal
- mA analog output

How the ratio control works

The flow rate is recorded and the dosing capacity adjusted proportionally to the flow rate using the flow rate sensor with linear mA output signal.

On the settings for the flow rate signal see menu "Inputs/Outputs" - "Flow Wq".



# Please note

If the measuring range end value of the flow meter is not identical with the actual maximum flow rate, a factor for adjusting the flow rate signal should be input in the menu "Inputs/Outputs" - "Flow Wq".

For example:

Measuring range flow meter = 5000 l/h / max. flow rate = 2500 l/h => factor = 5000: 2500 = 2,0

Δ

The relationship between control variable and dosing output is determined by the internal dosing factor.

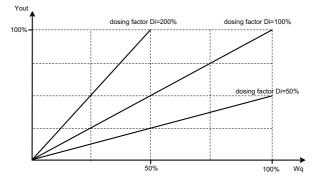
If a positioner with feedback is used as the dosing output, it can be linearized using several support points. At least two points are required (0/100 %). It possible to define 2, 3, 6 or 11 support points with definite steps. In the menu "Dosing" - "Ym Calib. Points" the number can be defined. The support points then have to be set in menu "Dosing" - "Ym Calib. Manual"(see5.3.12 "Positioner calibration with SFC (application 3) or single feed forward (application 2)").

The controller output is calculated in this operating mode as follows:

Yout = Wq x DF

| Wq | control variable 1 flow rate in % |
|----|-----------------------------------|
| DF | set dosing factor in %            |

The figure below shows the output dosing capacity depending on the flow rate Wq and the set dosing factor.



Picture 16 Dosing factor

# 4.6 Controller outputs

# Controller types

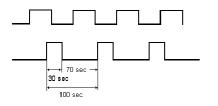
| Controller for                                   | Туре    | Parameter description    | Action                                     |
|--|---------|--------------------------|--|
| Positioner with feedback                         | 3-point | Positioner with Ym       | Dosing <b>↑</b> or <b>↓</b>                |
| Positioner without feedback                      | 3-point | Positioner without<br>Ym | Dosing <b>↑</b> or <b>↓</b>                |
| Motor dosing pump (pulse duration controller)    | 2-point | Dosing pump 2p           | Dosing <b>↑</b> or <b>↓</b>                |
| 2 Motor dosing pumps (pulse duration controller) | 3-point | Dosing pump 3p           | Dosing <b>↑</b> and <b>↓</b>               |
| Pulse pump (pulse frequency controller)          | 2-point | Pulse pump 2p            | Dosing <b>↑</b> or <b>↓</b>                |
| 2 pulse pumps (pulse<br>frequency controller)    | 3-point | Pulse pump 3p            | Dosing <b>↑</b> and <b>↓</b>               |
| Dosing pump with mA-input                        | 2-point | Analog output 2p         | Dosing <b>↑</b> or <b>↓</b>                |
| 2 dosing pumps with mA-input                     | 3-point | analog output 3p         | Dosing $\bigstar$ and $\blacktriangledown$ |
| Dosing contact                                   | 2-point | Enable contact           | Dosing 🛧                                   |

Positioner (with and without feedback)

With the selection of the integrated controller for "positioner", for example, it is possible to use chlorineoverfeed control in connection with a positioner as dosing equipment in a chlorinator.

If positioner feedback is available, it must be calibrated during commissioning. Potentiometer 1 KOhm/5 KOhm or 0 - 1 V or 0/4 - 20 mA signals can be connected as positioner feedback (see section 4.15 "Actuator feedback").

The positioner feedback can either be calibrated automatically or by manually setting the positioner to the 0 and 100% positions. If ratio control is used, up to 11 calibrationpoints are available. These points can only be calibrated manually. 2-point pulse duration controller for dosing pumps The dosing pump is switched on for the calculated time within an adjustable cycle period TP (relay contact). The cycle period is mainly determined by the reaction time of the connected system and entered as the cycle period TP.



| Example: | Cycle period TP   | = | 100 s |
|----------|-------------------|---|-------|
|          | Output value Yout | = | 30 %  |
|          | Duty cycle        |   | 30 s  |
|          | Off duty cycle    |   | 70 s  |
|          |                   |   |       |

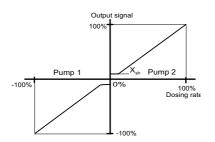
2-point pulse frequency controller for pulse pumps Pulse pumps are controlled with 0 to max. pulse rate per minute, depending on the specification of the connected pump. The SFC supports pumps with 100, 120, 140, 160 and 180 pulses per minute.

The duty cycle during each dosing is 0.3 s. The break time is calculated to be between 0.2 and 60 s, depending on the dosing rate.

Example for a pulse pump with 120 pulses/min:

| Yout in %  | 100 | 84 | 72 | 56 | 50 | 33 | 25 | 10 | 5 | 10 |
|------------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|---|----|
| Pulses/min | 120 | 96 | 85 | 75 | 60 | 40 | 30 | 12 | 6 | 10 |

3-point pulse-duration controller for dosing pump and 3-point pulse-frequency controller for pulse pump



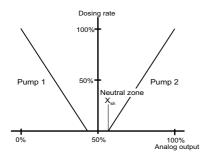
Pump 1 decreases the control value. Pump 2 increases the control value.

The control range is between -100 % (pump 1) and +100 % (pump 2); this range can also be set in manual mode.

If the setpoint = actual value, no pump is activated (neutral zone Xsh).

Output signals as for 2-point pulse-duration controller and 2-point pulse-frequency controller.

| Dosing factor<br>e.g. for electrolysis systems | A special controller is required for controlling electrolysis units to prevent excessive on/off switching (on account of the response times of the electrolysis unit).   |
|--|--|
|  | This controller output, therefore, uses a minimum duty cycle as well as a switching hysteresis to minimize the switching cycles.   |
|  | If the value falls below the specified $Cl_2$ setpoint minus hysteresis (e.g. setpoint 0.50mg/l - hysteresis 0.05 = 0.45mg/l), the controller output switches on.<br>The controller output remains active for at least the set minimum duty cycle. If the setpoint is exceeded and the minimum duty cycle has expired, the contact switches off. |
|  | The minimum duty cycle is ignored in manual mode.  |
| Controller with mA output                      | The SFC has an analog mA output. This can optionally be assigned as a registration output or controller output.  |
|  | If pH dosing "analog output.2P" or "analog output.3P" is selected the output is permanently assigned.  |
| Analog output controller 2-point               | With a controller output of 0 %, the output current is 0 or 4 mA; with<br>a higher controller output, the output current reaches up to 20 mA.<br>Pumps with current input, thyristor controllers with DC or 3-phase<br>pumps or analog control valves can be used as dosing equipment.   |
| Analog output controller 3-point               | Pump 1 decreases the control value.  |



Pump 1 decreases the control value. Pump 2 increases the control value.

Output behavior is similar to "analog output controller (2-point)", but with 50 % offset. This means that with a control deviation of 0 % (setpoint = actual value) a current of 10 or 12 mA is output (pump is idle).

| Setting | Signal      | Pump   | Signal  | Pump   |
|---------|-------------|--------|---------|--------|
| 020 mA  | 00.10<br>mA | Pump 1 | 1020 mA | Pump 2 |
| 420 mA  | 40.12<br>mA | Pump 1 | 1220 mA | Pump 2 |

Therefore, 2 suitable pumps can be controlled with one mA current loop.

# 4.7 Control parameters

Control parameters are input variables that determine the control functions of a controller. Different parameters apply to each type of controller.

|                     | Please note   |         |  |  |
|---------------------|---|---------|--|--|
|                     | The control parameters are listed alphabetically.   |         |  |  |
| Flow rate source    | This parameter is only available during single feed forward in application 2.   |         |  |  |
|                     | flow rate sig   | nal for | tches off the flow input (off) and activates the<br>the single feed forward (factory setting = flow<br>control variable. |  |
|                     | For quantity-<br>"Flow Measu  |         | tional dosing, the parameter must be set to t".  |  |
| Flow rate direction | •   |         | ermines the direction of the flow rate signal<br>I to the actuator output:   |  |
|                     | direct  | =       | Flow rate input signal directly proportional to the positioner output (factory setting)                                  |  |
|                     | inverse   | =       | 1 flow rate input signal   |  |
|                     | Example:  |         | 00 % flow rate = 0 – 20 mA (direct)<br>00 % flow rate = 20 – 0 mA (inverse)  |  |
| Max. pulses/min     | Meaning:<br>Maximum number of pulses  |         |  |  |
|                     | Explanation:<br>The pulses max./min parameter only applies to pulse pumps.  |         |  |  |
|                     | This parameter is used to set the maximum number of pulses per minute in accordance with the employed pump.   |         |  |  |
|                     | Setting range<br>The paramet<br>or 180 pulse  | ter max | k. pulses/min. can be set to 100, 120, 140, 160  |  |
| Max.lin.Corr        | This parameter monitors changes to already learned dosing factors.<br>If new dosing factor changes are learned, which are larger than the max. linearity correction, this dosing factor is used for all values in the dosing curve = > initialization of the curve. |         |  |  |

|                | Special case:                                   |                 |   |
|----------------|---|-----------------|---|
|                | Max.lin.Corr. = 0:                              | dos<br>the      | curve function is turned off, only one<br>ing factor is valid for all flow rates and<br>higher-level single feedback closed loop<br>trol remains active.              |
|                | Example:  |                 |   |
|                | Max.lin.Corr. = 50 %                            | 6 (ba           | sed on dosing factor):  |
|                | Previous dosing fac                             | tor:            | 30 %  |
|                | Newly learned dosir<br>factor:                  | ng              | 48 %  |
|                | max. permissible correction range:              |                 | 30 ± (50 % von 30 %) = 30 % ± 15 %  |
|                | Change in this case                             | :               | 48 % - 30 % = +18 %   |
|                |   | new c           | ctor is assumed for the entire curve,<br>losing factor (+ 48%) is greater than the<br>(+18%).   |
| Control factor | -   |                 | ol range and measuring range, in order to cation Xp to the process.   |
|                | Control factor=<br>(End of measuring r<br>range | range           | e - start of measuring range): Control  |
|                | Example:  |                 |   |
|                | Start of measuring range:                       |                 | рН 4  |
|                | End of measuring range:                         |                 | рН 9  |
|                | Max. process contro<br>range:                   | ol              | ± 1 pH (=> 2 pH increments)=> Control<br>factor = (9 - 4) : 2 = 2,5   |
| PI shutdown    | function when the lir<br>change in flow rate i  | nit is<br>s gre | rate changes triggered by the YPI stop<br>exceeded. Factory setting = 5%, i.e. if the<br>ater than 5% the PI controller is frozen for<br>Adjustment range 5 to 100 %. |

| Control direction  | Meaning:<br>Direction of the control   |  |  |
|--------------------|--|--|--|
|                    | Display:<br>Direct/inverse (e.g. for pH)   |  |  |
|                    | Explanation:<br>Defines which medium is used to perform the correction.  |  |  |
|                    | Example:<br>pH: Control direction "inverse": Lowering pH-value   |  |  |
|                    | pH:  | adding acid<br>Control direction "direct": Adding alkaline to raise<br>the pH value                                |  |
| Setpoint           |  | ue at which the control variable can be maintained by<br>. The setting range corresponds to the respective<br>nge. |  |
| Control variable 2 | This parameter activates and deactivates a second control variable during the single feed forward (only with application 2). If "Control Variable 2" = measured value X is selected, this influences the actuator output. The "Off" setting indicates that this control variable is inactive (factory setting) (see 4.5.2.1 "Single feed forward with process measurement"). |  |  |
| Т                  | Sampling time T is the time after which a change controlvariable or setpoint is responded to. This value must be adjusted in the case of delayed feedback signals.   |  |  |
| Tconst             | Defines the constant dead time in the compound loop. Consists of<br>the sample water line dead time and the dosing delay time (for the<br>calculation, see 4.5.2.3 "Compound loop with process<br>measurement").   |  |  |
| Tn                 | Meaning:<br>Integral action time (I-element)   |  |  |
|                    | Display:<br>Minutes (min)  |  |  |
|                    | Explanation:<br>On the basis of the integral action time Tn, the dosing capacity<br>changes constantly until the setpoint is reached. The higher the<br>value of Tn, the longer it takes until the controller increases the<br>dosing rate.  |  |  |
|                    | Tn higher: Control response becomes slower<br>Tn lower: Control response is faster   |  |  |
|                    | Setting range:<br>The parameter Tn can be set from 0 – 100 min (Tn = 0 means that<br>the "I-element" is deactivated, i.e. a pure P-control response<br>applies). It may not be possible to reach the setpoint value.   |  |  |

*Tp* Meaning: Cycle period

> Display: Seconds (s)

Explanation: The parameter Tp only applies to dosing pumps.

The cycle period Tp defines a switching period, which must be coordinated with the respective pump type.

Setting range: The parameter Tp can be set from 10 – 180 s.

Example: Fast dosing pumps correspond to a low Tp; slow dosing pumps correspond to a high Tp.

The control parameter Tp must always be adjusted to suit the pump employed:

| Dosing pump strokes/min | up to 20 | 20-40 | 40-80 | 80-125 | 125-200 |
|-------------------------|----------|-------|-------|--------|---------|
| Tp value                | 120      | 100   | 60    | 30     | 15      |

Ts Meaning: Loop rise time

> Display: Minutes (min)

Explanation:

Time required to reach the measuring range end value with 100% dosing chemical supply (see 4.9 "Adaption")

Setting range: The parameter Ts can be set from 1 s - 8 h.



# Please note

If the values Tu and Ts are manually modified, the control parameters Xp and Tn are re-calculated.

| Tu       | Meaning:<br>Loop dead time   |
|----------|--|
|          | Display:<br>Seconds (s)  |
|          | Explanation:<br>Time required between dosing start and clear recognition of the<br>rise in the control variable  |
|          | Setting range:<br>The parameter Tu can be set from 1 s – 59 min 59s.   |
|          | Please note  |
| •        | If the values Tu and Ts are manually modified, the control parameters Xp and Tn are re-calculated.   |
| Tvar     | Defines the variable dead time in the compound loop. The time to be entered is based on 100 % flow rate (for the calculation, see 4.5.2.3 "Compound loop with process measurement"). |
| Ту       | Meaning:<br>Running time of the positioner   |
|          | Display:<br>Seconds (s)  |
|          | Explanation:<br>The parameter Ty only applies to positioners.  |
|          | Ty is the time which the positioner requires to adjust from 0 $\%$ to 100 $\%.$  |
|          | Setting range:<br>The parameter Ty can be set from 10 – 180 s.   |
| X factor | This parameter is only available during single feed forward, control variable 2 = measured value X.  |
|          | Determines an adjustment factor, how strongly the measured   |

value influences the actuator output (factory setting 1.0).

### *Xp* Meaning: Proportional factor

Display: Percentage (%) with factor

# Explanation:

The control amplification is determined with the proportional factor.

The lower the proportional factor Xp is selected in %, the greater the deviation from the setpoint is amplified, and the more quickly the controller attempts to control the deviation from the setpoint.

The control amplification factor is calculated using the following equation:

# Factor = (1/Xp) x 100 %

Setting range: The parameter XP can be set from 1 % (factor 100) – 1000 % (factor 0.1).

*X direction* Determines the direction of the second control variable during the single feed forward.

| direct  | = | Measured value directly proportional to the actuator output                              |
|---------|---|--|
| inverse | = | Actuator output indirectly proportional to the measured value (factory setting = direct) |

# *Xsh* Meaning: Neutral zone

Display:

Percentage (%)

Explanation: The parameter Xsh only applies to 3-point controllers.

No control output occurs in the neutral zone.

Setting range: The parameter Xsh can be set from 1 – 5 % (depending on the measuring range). The neutral zone is the defined range of setpoint +  $X_{sh}$ to setpoint  $X_{sh}$ .

| Ym calibration | This parameter is only possible for dosing output positioner with feedback.   |
|----------------|---|
|                | Adjust the positioner feedback signal to 0 % and 100 % dosing capacity. When automatic Ym calibration is started, the positioner moves to positions 0 % and 100 % and calibrates both positions with the SFC. |
|                | With manual calibration of the up-to-11 positions, all positions must be shifted to manually and saved in the menu using the Enter key.   |
| Ymax           | Meaning:<br>Dosing rate limitation<br>(single feedback control-loop control only)   |
|                | Display:<br>Percentage (%)  |
|                | Explanation:<br>The parameter Ymax only applies to:   |
|                | Positioner with feedback  |
|                | Dosing pumps  |
|                | Solenoid pump   |
|                | Controller with mA output   |
|                | Ymax defines the maximum control output to the actuator   |
|                | The control parameter corresponds to electronic dosing limitation of the actuator.  |
|                | Setting range:<br>The parameter Ymax can be set from 0 – 100 %.   |

# Ymin Meaning: Dosing rate basic load (single feedback control-loop control only)

# Display: Percentage (%)

### Explanation: The parameter Yminonly applies to:

- Positioner with feedback
- Dosing pumps 2p
- Solenoid pumps 2p
- Controllers with mA output 2p

A basic dosing rate is output to the actuators with Ymin.

Setting range: The parameter Ymincan be set from 0 - 100 %.



# Please note

Ymin and Ymax is only available for the single feedback closedloop control.

The control range is limited by the parameters Ymax and Ymin. Do not select a Ymax value lower than Ymin. At Ymin> 0 overdosing can occur.

Yout-factor

### Meaning: Multiplication factor for dosing output

Setting range: The parameter Yout factor can be set from 1.0 - 4.0.

Explanation:

If the dosing factor 100 % is not sufficient, the parameter Yout factor is used to increase the dosing output. The parameter is available with compound loop and single feed forward.

# 4.8 Alarms

The output of the alarms takes place by means of relay contacts and alarm indicators on the display. The number of the max. four alarms is determined in the application or by the version of SFC.

Each alarm can be assigned the following functions:

| • Limit value = Min | All measured values can be selected individually Cl <sub>2</sub> , pH, mV, Cl-N, conductivity, etc. |
|---------------------|---|
| • Limit value = Max | All measured values can be selected individually Cl <sub>2</sub> , pH, mV, Cl-N, conductivity, etc. |

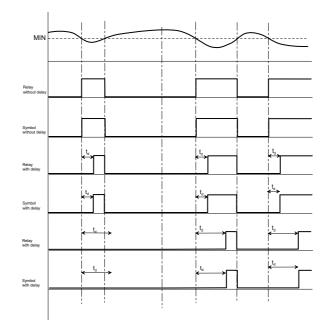
• Digital inputs 1 – 2 can be individually selected

- Error
- Flow rate min/max
- ext. Setpoint/DF min, max
- Yout min/max
- Manual mode
- Ypi min/max

The type of alarm can be selected in the "Alarms" menu in the "Alarm  $\dots$  – Functions" displays. There are three alarm types.

In all alarm types the response can be influenced by entering a delay (td) (refer to the diagrams in this chapter).

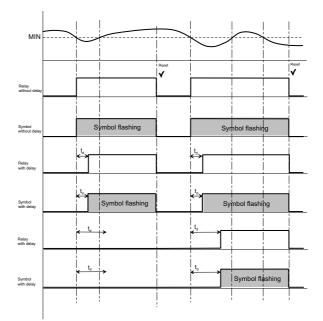
Unlatched alarm without acknowledgement option (N.O. unlatched, N.C. unlatched) The alarm symbol on the display is on when an alarm is triggered and goes out automatically when the alarm condition is removed. The same applies to the contact.



Picture 17 Example MIN alarm

Latched alarm with reset acknowledgement option (N.O.latched. reset, N.C.latched.reset)

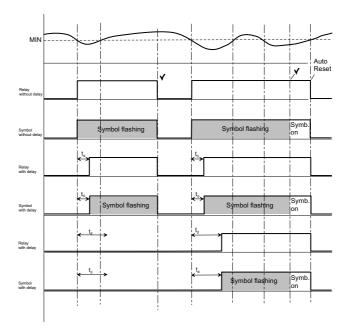
In the event of an alarm, the alarm symbol on the display flashes until the alarm is acknowledged. The LED also goes out even if the alarm conditions still apply when the alarm is acknowledged.



Picture 18 Example MIN alarm

Latched alarm with confirmation (N.O. latched. ack N.C. latched. ack) In the event of an alarm, the alarm symbol on the display flashes until the alarm is acknowledged.

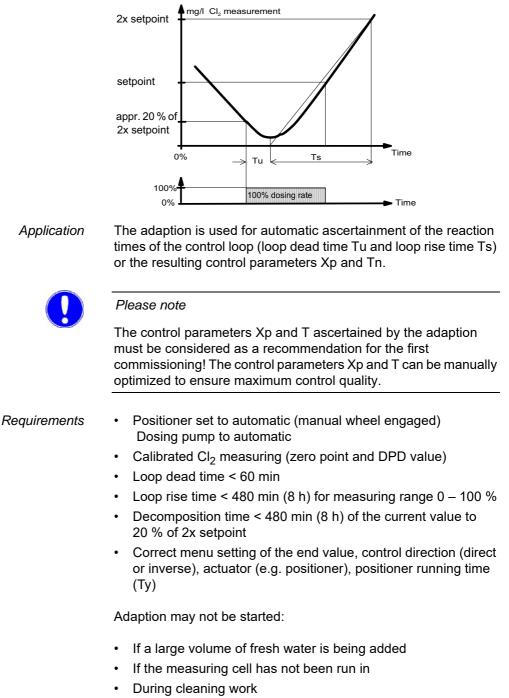
- If the alarm condition is no longer present when the alarm is acknowledged, the symbol disappears.
- If the alarm condition is still present when the alarm is acknowledged, the symbol is reset from flashing to a permanent state. The symbol or the contact is active until the alarm condition has been removed (auto-reset).



Picture 19 Example MIN alarm

# 4.9 Adaption

This only applies with Cl<sub>2</sub> single feedback closed loop control.

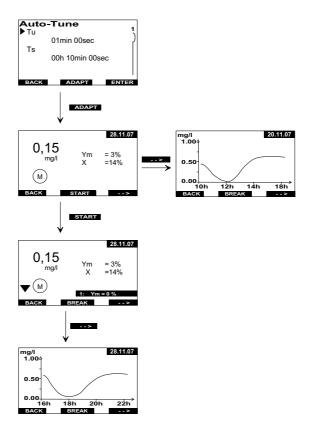


- During filter backwashing
- While the circulation changes
- If there are flow rate fluctuations

*Starting adaption* **1** Starting from the basic display, select "Adaption" from the "Cl<sub>2</sub>free ()" menu.

The Tu and Ts loop parameters are displayed.

- 2 In the "Adaption" menu, select the "ADAPT softkey.
- 3 The display shows the current chlorine value, the actuator output Ym/Y and the control variable in %. The diagram of the previous adaption is shown when the key —> is pressed.
- **4** Press "START" to start the adaption. Adaption starts.
- 5 Adaption can be cancelled using the "Cancel" softkey.



Picture 20 Adaption displays

*Displays* The diagram shows the chlorine value curve during the adaption phases. The current phase of adaption (total of 13) is shown in the bottom line.

Successful adaption is confirmed by the message "ADAPTION OK".

Press the "BACK" softkey to return to the basic display.

If adaption is not successful, the error message "ADAPTION?" is displayed.

### Adaption sequence Each adaption phase is then displayed with a status message:

| D    | isplay text  | Explanation                                     |
|------|--------------|---|
| "0:  | Init"        | Start   |
| "1:  | Ym = 0 %"    | Chlorinator to 0 % or dosing pump off           |
| "2:  | X = 20 %"    | Delay until actual value < 0.2 x 2x<br>setpoint |
| "3:  | Ym = 100 %"  | Chlorinator to 100 % or dosing pump on          |
| "4:  | Ym = 100 %"  | Wait until the chlorinator reaches 100<br>%     |
| "5:  | Tu! "        | Start dead time measurement                     |
| "6:  | Tu! "        | Measurement of the loop dead time Tu            |
| "7:  | Tu Check"    | Plausibility enquiry dead time                  |
| "8:  | Init Ts"     | Start of rise time measurement                  |
| "9:  | Ts "         | Measurement of the loop rise time Ts            |
| "10: | TS "         | Calculate control parameters                    |
| "11: | Y = 0 %"     | Chlorinator to 0 % or dosing pump off           |
| "12: | Y = 0 %"     | Wait until the chlorinator reaches 0 %          |
| "13: | Adaption OK" | End   |

Various status messages can be output, depending on the selection of the actuator. Different status messages also have different execution times. It is possible that some status messages are only displayed briefly or not at all if the execution time is very short.



### Caution!

Adaption can take up to 13 hours, depending on the control loop. During this time no errors should occur on the control loop (e.g. filter backwashing, changes in the circulation or widely fluctuating number of visitors).



# Please note

The adaption procedure can be terminated at any time with "STOP". The previously set parameters remain unchanged.

Completing adaption without errors

When the loop times (dead time Tu and rise time Ts) have been completed without error, calculation of the control parameters Xp and Tn commences. This is indicated by the message "Adaption OK". The calculated parameters are entered in the menus. When adaption has been concluded, the measuring amplifier adjusts with the newly calculated control parameters and continues in the selected operating mode (e.g. automatic).

To monitor the determined loop times they are entered into the "Tu" and "Ts" menus .

If errors occur in the control loop during adaption, incorrect loop times and therefore incorrect control parameters can be determined.



# Caution!

The remaining control parameters Ymin, Ymax and Tp are not influenced when adaption is performed. The control parameters Xp and Tn are determined for Ymin = 0 % (no basic load) and Ymax = 100 % (no dosing rate limitation). If there is a systemspecific requirement for a basic load Ymin or a dosing rate limitation Ymax, it must be taken into account that the control loop is restricted as a result. There is then the risk of excessive chlorination (Ymin too high) or inadequate chlorination (Ymax limits excessively).

Completing adaption with error If errors occur in the control loop during adaption (e.g. filter backwashing, changes in the circulation or widely fluctuating number of visitors to the pool) or if the reaction times of the control loop are too long, adaption is interrupted.

Possible error conditions:

# Initial value not reached (Display: "T = >8h")

When adaption has started and the dosing system has closed or the dosing pump has switched off, the measuring amplifier waits until the actual value has dropped below the initial value (0.2 x the measurement range value). This delay is indicated by the message "2: X = 20 %" and the maximum permissible time is 8 hours.

# Loop dead time too high (Display: "Tu = > 1h")

The value determined by the time measurement between starting up the dosing, switching on the dosing pumps and the rise of the actual value may only take a maximum of 1 hour. This measured time is displayed by "6: Tu!".

# Loop rise time too great (display: "Ts = > 8h")

The time is determined by a measurement, which the control loop requires at a 100 % dosing rate of the dosing system or the dosing pump, to increase the actual value to 50 % of the measuring range. This measurement is indicated with "9: Ts!" and may take a maximum of 4 hours.

If any of the error conditions described above occur, adaption is interrupted. The measuring amplifier displays a fault message. The "old" parameters Xp and Tn are not changed.

Determination of the control parameters with known Tu and Ts times If the loop times Tu and Ts are already known or if these cannot be determined automatically due to specific system conditions, the loop times can be entered into the "Tu" and "Ts" menus. When Tu or Ts are saved, the control parameters Xp and Tn are also calculated and entered in the menus. SFC

# 4.10 Sample water inlet disinfection

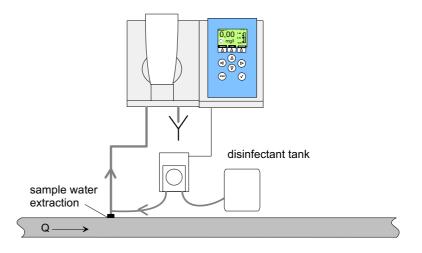
For certain applications it is necessary to disinfect the sample water inlet and the measuring cells occasionally using disinfectant such as chlorine solution, for example for measuring the zero chlorine point or for dechlorination. Because there should ideally be no disinfectant in the sample water, you may find that the sample water inlet and the measuring cell become contaminated with bacteria, resulting in an incorrect reading.



# Please note

This function is only available with DES modules.

To avoid this, switch on the SFC's "Sample Line Dos" function. This adds disinfectant to the water at one or more specific times (range start) for a certain length of time (dosing time). The system has a relay output for this function, for example to control a dosing pump (Alarm 2/Relay 3). The figure below shows a typical application for monitoring drinking water to ensure it is free of disinfectant. Such systems may be installed upstream of ion exchange columns, for example, to protect the system against chlorine.



| Sample Line Dos | OFF           | OFF - ON   |
|-----------------|---------------|--|
| Range-Start     | 1: 00:00      | 9 start times, can be<br>programmed by day of<br>the week or the same<br>start time can be used<br>for several days, e.g.<br>1:06:30 MON-SUN |
| Dosing time     | 00 min 30 sec | 30 sec - 20 min  |
| Delay           | 00 min 00 sec | 0 30 min   |
| SW stop time    | 01 min 30 sec | 1 min 30 sec - 59 min 59<br>sec (always at least<br>dosing time + 1 min)   |
| Hold delay      | 15 min 00 sec | 0 - 20 min   |
|                 |               |  |

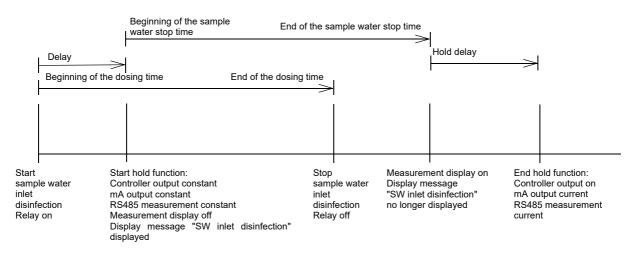
This function can be found on the main "Extern. functions" menu and contains the following options:



# Please note

If this function is activated, alarm relay 2 is no longer available!

The disinfection process is shown schematically below:



The function starts at the times and on the days programmed automatically, whether the system is in manual or automatic mode. The process is shown below (see also the schematic diagram on the previous page):

 Relay 3 switches on to start the dosing pump The "Dosing time" starts running At the same time, the "Delay" (the dead time between the dosing point and the measurement) starts as well

- As soon as the "Delay" has finished, the "Sample water stop time" starts
  - The message "SW inlet disinfection" is displayed instead of the measurement
  - The measurement cannot be changed via the ports (e.g. RS485) any more (constant) The controller output cannot be changed any more (constant)
  - The mA output cannot be changed any more (constant)
- Once the dosing time has finished, relay 3 switches the dosing pump off
- Once the "Sample water stop time" has finished the measurement is displayed again (and the message disappears)
- After the hold delay has elapsed: all of the measurements are current again The controller output is current again The mA output is current again



# Caution!

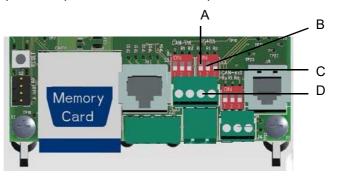
This function always starts as programmed, irrespective of whether the system is in manual or automatic mode and irrespective of whether the sample water flow rate. This function needs to be deactivated if maintenance work is being carried out or if the system is shut down for any length of time, otherwise it will feed disinfectant unchecked and the disinfectant may leak!

# 4.11 Serial interfaces

Various interfaces are available for external connections to the SFC.

- RS232 The RS232 interface serves to connect:
  - A laptop or PC for firmware updates (download the latest firmware version together with an update program and update instructions from the homepage www.evoqua.com. Matching RS232 connection cable: part no. W3T164902).
- *RS485* The RS485 interface provides connectivity to:
  - · Web technology via the ChemWeb-Server
  - Higher level visualization systems through OPC Server Data Access V2.0
  - SECO S7 Serial data link to SIMATIC S7-300
  - external gateways

The RS485 interface of the SFC is electrically isolated. For connecting to a bus system, four terminals, a terminating resistor Rt and the balancing resistors  $R_u$  and  $R_d$  are integrated in the SFC (see front panel board in the cover).



Picture 21 Front panel board

- A Ru
- B Rt
- C Rd
- D Terminal strips RS485 interface



# Please note

The instruction manual of RS485 interface can be requested from your contractual partner or can be downloaded from the homepage www.evoqua.com.

# 4.12 CAN interface

The CAN interface is used as a CAN sensor bus and serves to connect:

· CAN sensor measurement modules such as SiDiSens pH

The CAN interface of the SFC is electrically isolated. For the purpose of connecting the CAN bus components, a standardised plug connector (M12, 5-pin) is integrated in the SFC to supply the CAN sensor with voltage.

For wiring, preassembled 4-wire cables of up to 10 m, a T-piece and a plug with terminating resistance are available. For longer cables the CAN bus cable  $2 \times 2 \times 0.22 \text{ mm}^2$  and ready to assemble plug connectors can be used (see spare parts). The maximum cable length must not exceed 1000 m. Stub cables should be avoided and are only permitted up to a total length of 5 metres.

The SFC operates as a master in the bus system. CAN slaves are the attached sensors.



### Please note

There can only be one master in the CAN bus system. For this reason do not connect two SFCs together for data exchange via the CAN interface.

Only the CAN sensor measurement module SiDiSens pH can be used for the  $Cl_2$ ++ measurement (pH compensated  $Cl_2$  measurement).

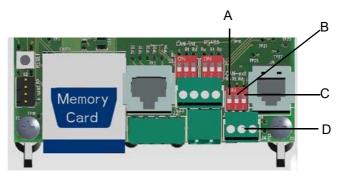
The combined chlorine in the SFC total chlorine can be measured using CAN and a SiDiSens DES or via mA input 1 and a SFC for the measurement of the free chlorine (see 4.2.9"mA inputs of the A&C boards").

# CAN bus setup



In each case on the first and last device on the bus a bus terminator (bus end Rt) must be installed.

In the SFC using the DIP switch Rt, the terminal resistance can be switched on or off (see front panel board in the SFC cover).



Picture 23 Front panel board

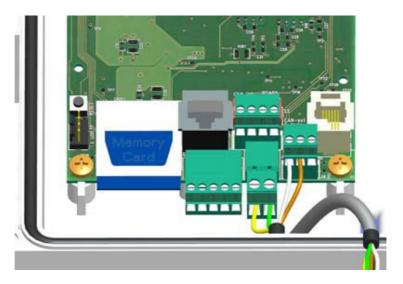
- A Ru
- B Rt
- C Rd
- D CAN external terminal strips



Please note

The DIP switches Ru and Rd must always be switched off.

The SiDiSens is supplied with a special plug for the bus termination which can be plugged directly into the free connection socket for termination.





#### Please note

The CAN interface is not compatible with  $\mbox{CRN}_{\text{OPER}}$  or CAN component groups of other manufacturers.

# 4.13 Fieldbus

The SFC can be connected to various fieldbus systems. A number of different retrofit kits, in the form of additional circuit boards that can be installed in the SFC, are available. The fieldbus module is auto-detected and can be configured using the system menus. The corresponding menus are only displayed once a fieldbus module has been auto-detected. Different settings menus are displayed, depending on the fieldbus module installed. The process data transmission is bidirectional. In other words, data can be received as well as sent. Three SFC fieldbus module retrofit kits (types of fieldbus) are available.

| Fieldbus<br>type | Part No.  | Designation  |
|------------------|-----------|--|
| Profibus DP      | W3T166498 | Fieldbus module retrofit set<br>SFC Profibus DP with terminal<br>connections |
| Profinet         | W3T166499 | Fieldbus module retrofit set<br>SFC Profinet with terminal<br>connections    |
| Modbus TCP       | W3T166500 | Fieldbus module retrofit set<br>SFC Modbus TCP with<br>terminal connections  |



#### Please note

The installation and start-up instructions for the fieldbus retrofit kits are available from your contractual partner or can be downloaded from the homepage www.evoqua.com.

# 4.14 Firmware update



#### Caution!

A firmware-update can cause a "Init" to factory default values! Please note all relevant menu settings before update!

The SFC offers two different ways to perform a firmware update.

Serial firmware update

Update using a SD memory card (not for SFC-SC) Via the serial interface of a laptop/PC, it is possible to update the firmware of the SFC. A special download software and the latest firmware including a description can be downloaded from the homepage at www.evoqua.com. A special update cable is available for the firmware update under part no. W3T164902.

The SFC (front panel board) is able to perform a software update with the existing SD memory card slot starting with software version 1.02. The latest software can be downloaded from the download area of the Internet homepage at www.evoqua.com.

Following files are needed for the update:

- SFC\_LOAD.BTL (bootloader)
- SFC\_V300.mhx (firmware of the SFC front panel board)
- BTL.DAT

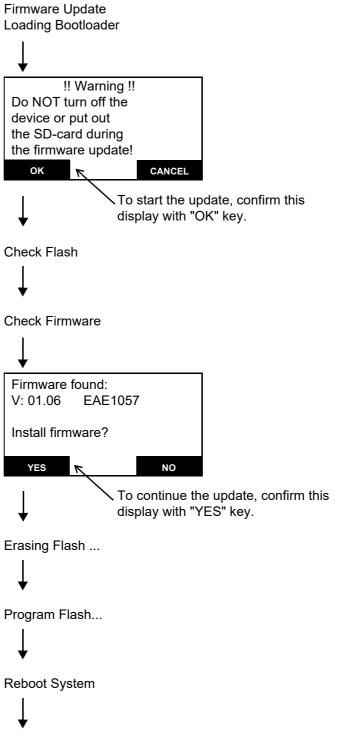
These files must then be copied to the SD memory card (no subfolder).



#### Please note

The SFC only supports SD memory cards with a maximum capacity of 2 GB.

Select "Start" in the "System Firmware Update - SD Card" menu and confirm with "Enter" key. Various messages are depicted on the display.



The device is ready for operation after the reboot.

# 4.15 Actuator feedback

The actuator feedback of the SFC is set at the factory to potentiometer with 1 kOhm. For other feedback signals the device must be reset using the DIP switch S4 (see A&C board).

Possible signals are:

- Potentiometer 1 KOhm
- Potentiometer 5 KOhm
- 0/4 20 mA signal
- 0 1 V signal

Switch settings of DIP switch S4:

|                  | S4-A<br>1 | S4-B<br>2 | S4-C<br>3 | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |
|------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| Potentiometer 1K | OFF       | OFF       | ON        |                                       |
| Potentiometer 5K | OFF       | OFF       | OFF       |                                       |
| 0/4 – 20mA*      | OFF       | ON        | ON        |                                       |
| 0 – 1 V*         | OFF       | OFF       | ON        | Picture 24 DIP switch                 |

\* Additional a 1 kOhm resistance must be installed between terminal 5 and 7 at the feedback input.

# 4.16 Digital inputs

Two digital inputs are integrated in the A&C board of the SFC. These are provided for connecting voltage-free contacts (< 100 Ohm) and are supplied internally with 12 V.



#### Warning!

No voltage may be applied to the digital input terminals!

# 4.17 SD memory card



#### Warning!

Only insert/remove the SD memory card when the power supply to the system is off!

The SFC can be equipped with an SD memory card for saving or copying unit configurations (see 4.18 "Unit configuration") and for recording measured data. Every minute, all measured values, such as the main measurement (e.g.  $Cl_2$ , pH, etc.), flow rate, external setpoint or dosing factor, actuating variable Yout and temperature, along with the date and time, are saved on this card. The data are stored in files every month and have the following format:

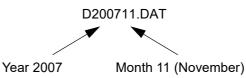


#### Please note

The SFC only supports SD memory cards with a maximum capacity of 2 GB.

The SD memory card is installed inside the SFC. In order to remove or replace the SD memory card, the cover of the SFC must be opened.

Example



The data can be further processed using any text editor or table processing program, such as EXCEL. The SD memory cards can be read-out and the data copied by any standard card reading device or PC.

#### Example of a file section

| Date       |       | MW-mg/l | Wq   | Wext./DF | Yout | Temperature |
|------------|-------|---------|------|----------|------|-------------|
| 2008-01-01 | 00:01 | 0.21    | 20.1 | 0.0      | 10.1 | 19.1        |
| 2008-01-01 | 00:02 | 0.21    | 20.1 | 0.0      | 10.1 | 19.1        |
| 2008-01-01 | 00:03 | 0.22    | 20.0 | 0.0      | 10.1 | 19.1        |
|            |       |         |      |          |      |             |
|            |       |         |      |          |      |             |
|            |       |         |      |          |      |             |



Picture 25 shows the installed SD memory card

A SD memory card



#### Please note

Files ending with "\*.Bin" can not be evaluated. They are only used as data storage for the SFC and must not be altered.

# 4.18 Unit configuration

The SFC gives the option of saving all unit settings as a configuration. Unit settings include all parameters that can be set in the menu, such as the controller mode, setpoint, limit values, etc.). A maximum of two configurations can be saved in the internal memory SFC (see Menu-System-Configuration-Save-Job 1, Job 2).

If configurations are saved in the internal memory as Job 1 and Job 2, they can be restored when required as the current unit settings. The previous unit settings are deleted in the process. It is possible to switch between Job 1 and Job 2 via digital input 1 or 2 (see Menu-Inputs/Outputs-Digital input-DI (1), DI (2)).

When "Job 2" is selected, a signal on the digital input causes configuration 2 to be loaded, and the SFC continues to operate with the unit settings of Job 2. If the signal on the digital input is deactivated, then configuration 1 is loaded again and the SFC continues to operate with the unit settings of Job 1.



Unit configuration of

SD memory card

#### Please note

For the changes to the configuration to take effect the digital input must be set to config. 2 in both configurations.

For data backup purposes, internally saved configurations can be copied to the SD memory card (see Menu-System-Configuration-Copy-Job 1 -> SD, Job 2 -> SD).

The Job file copied to the SD memory card (directory "JOB"-JOB1.Bin, JOB2.Bin) can be copied with any laptop/PC with a card reader, and can be transferred to other SFC systems via SD memory card (see Menu-System-Configuration-Copy Job 1 to SD, SD-Job 2 to act., SD-Job 1 to act., act. to SD-Job 2, act. to SD-Job 1, SD to Job 2, SD to Job 1, Job 2 to SD.\*).

\* act. refers to the current unit setting

#### **Special Features** 4.19

| Temperature measurement   | If there is no temperature measurement integrated into the sensor<br>measuring module (DES), the PT 1000 temperature measurement<br>is automatically used from the A&C board for temperature<br>compensation. This can also be switched off in the "Temperature"<br>calibration menu. The PT 1000 temperature compensation is<br>thereby generally turned off. |
|---------------------------|--|
|                           | If a temperature measurement is integrated into a sensor measuring module for chlorine, it is automatically used for compensation.   |
|                           | In the menu, it is possible to chose or switch between the temperature measurements of the sensor measuring module and the A&C board.  |
|                           | In the calibration menu for pH, you can select between a manual,<br>permanently set temperature value or the temperature<br>measurement with PT 1000 provided by the A&C board for<br>compensation. If the PT 1000 measurement of the mother board<br>is switched off, only a manual value may be set for compensation.  |
| Combined chlorine display | If a total chlorine measurement as well as free chlorine<br>measurement is installed via mA signal, it is possible to display the<br>combined chlorine value. To do this, set the display to "CI-comb"<br>in the total chlorine measurement "measurement range - sensor<br>type" menu.   |
|                           | If the free chlorine measurement is transmitted via an mA signal,<br>the mA input signal can be defined in the "measurement range"<br>menu. The mA signal of the free chlorine measurement is also<br>connected to mA input 1.   |
|                           | Please note  |

If mA input 1 is used to record the free chlorine, the operating mode combi-control or ratio control is not available. In this case the controller function is assigned to the total chlorine measurement.

# 5. Installation

# 5.1 Transport and storage

*Transport* The unit is supplied in standard packaging. During transport the packaged unit must be handled carefully and should not be exposed to wet weather or moisture.

Check that the transport packaging is undamaged. In the event of damage please inform the transport company immediately, as your rights to compensation will otherwise be lost.

If the device is damaged, please contact the respective contractual partner immediately.

Keep the packaging until the unit has been correctly installed and taken into operation.

Storage Store the unit and the sensors in a dry condition without any residual water in a dry place that is not exposed to the weather. Storage temperature, see 3.2 "Technical Data".

# 5.2 Installation

Installation siteThe unit must be protected against rain, frost and direct sunlight<br/>and may therefore not be installed outdoors.It must be mounted horizontally on a flat wall in a frost-free room<br/>with an ambient temperature of 0 to 50 °C.

The air in the room should be non-condensing.

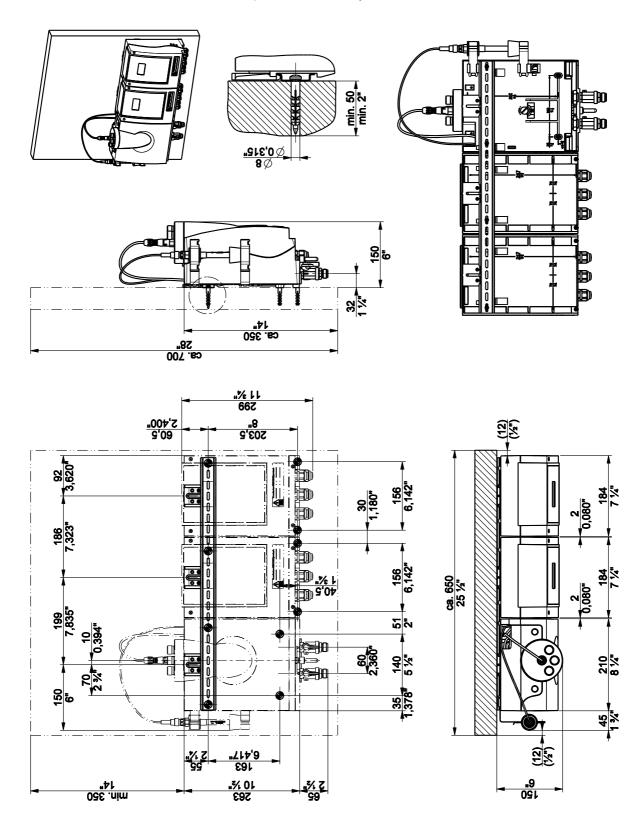
InstallationThe device is not suitable for an electrical connection with<br/>permanently installed cable conduits.<br/>If the cable glands do not meet local installation rules and<br/>regulations, these glands must be replaced with suitable ones.

*Opening the housing* **1** Remove the housing cover of the flow block assembly. To this purpose, lightly press the two buttons on the top of the housing (optional).

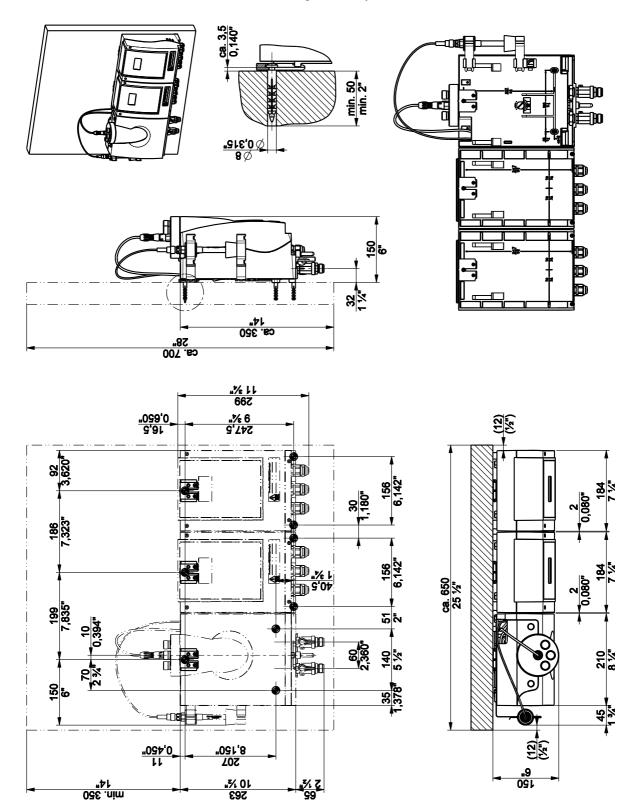
|                                  | 2 Release the four screws on the cover of the electronic module.  |
|----------------------------------|---|
|                                  | Caution!  |
|                                  | There are connection cables between the cover and basic housing.  |
|                                  | <b>3</b> Carefully remove the cover of the electronic module and leave to hang on the strain relief.  |
| Installation with mounting rails | <b>1</b> Fasten the mounting rail to the wall with two screws (diameter 5 mm) and two dowels (diameter 8 mm).   |
|                                  | 2 Hook the electronic module onto the mounting rail so that it is flush at the right and fasten to the wall with two screws (diameter 5 mm) and a dowel (diameter 8 mm).  |
|                                  | 3 Hook the flow block assembly onto the mounting rail on the left<br>next to the SFC and fasten to the wall with two screws<br>(diameter 5 mm) and two dowels (diameter 8 mm).  |
|                                  | Refer to "Top-hat rail assembly" on page 121 and Page 123.  |
|                                  | Please note   |
|                                  | If the flow block assembly is not mounted directly next to the electronic module, it can also be mounted without the mounting rail (see next page).   |
| mounting rails                   | If the electronic module and the flow block assembly are to be<br>mounted in different places, the modules can be hooked onto<br>suitable tallow-drop screws by the top holding fixtures instead of<br>onto the mounting rail. Proceed with the installation as described<br>above.   |
|                                  | Please note   |
|                                  | If the electronic module and the flow block assembly are mounted<br>at separate locations, the sensor cable extensions with a<br>maximum length of 50 m must be used. An impedance converter<br>for the Redox, fluoride and pH sensors is also required (see 8.<br>"Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts").                              |
|                                  | Refer to "Wall mounting assembly" on page 122 and Page 124.   |
|                                  | A special version is available for control cabinet installation. The base unit (basic electronics) of this version is attached to the mounting plate using a top-hat rail. The front control panel is fitted in accordance with the "Control cabinet installation" assembly drawing using the 3 m connecting cable provided (part no. W3T161012). |
|                                  | Refer to "Control cabinet installation assembly" on page 125 and Page 126.  |

5.

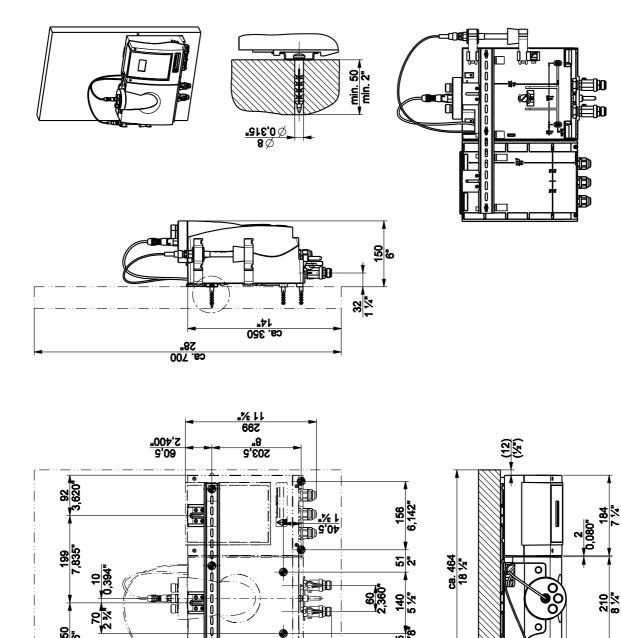
Top-hat rail assembly



Wall mounting assembly



Top-hat rail assembly



<u>5, 1%</u> 92

4 

، // 22

冒

.<u>714,8</u> 163

<u>10 %.</u> 583

35 ,378"

22

min. 350 14"

150 6"

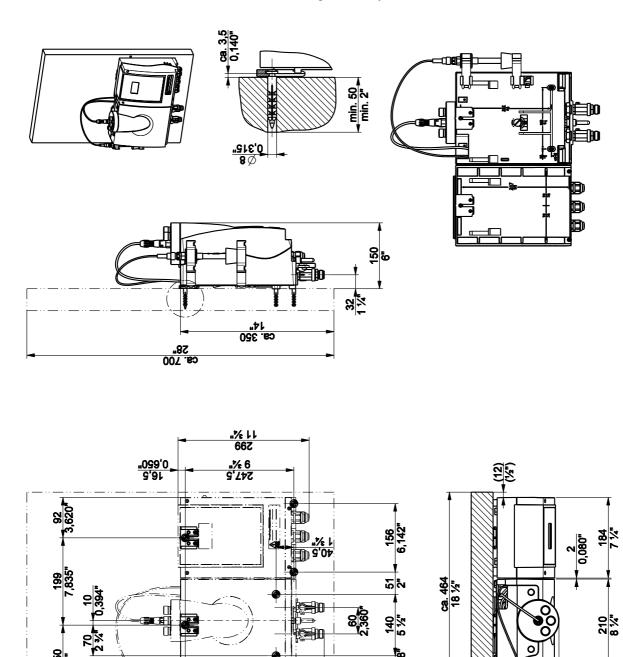
5.

45

(<u>12</u>) (<u>7</u>")

120 120

## Wall mounting assembly



202 201

10 <u>½.</u> 593

<u>5 %</u> 92

0<mark>'420..</mark> 11

35

WT.050.590.000.DE.IM.0719

(12)

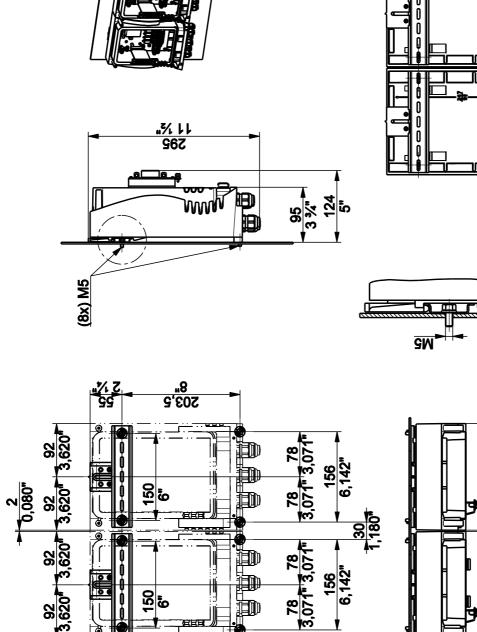
9<u></u> 120

<del>1</del>%

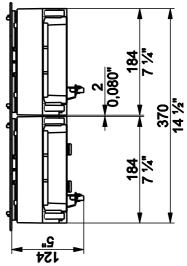
6"

min. 350 14"





৾৾



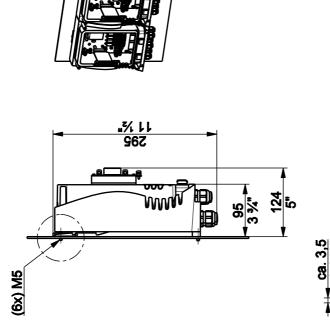
5.

D D D

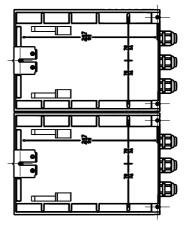
D

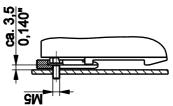
D

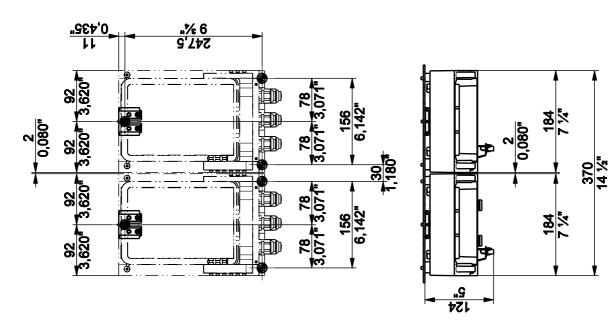
D

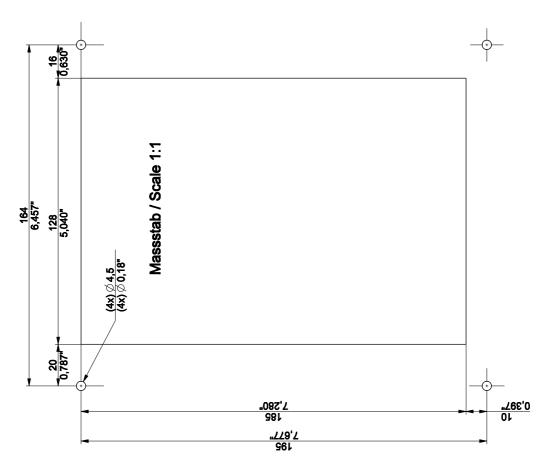


Control cabinet installation assembly

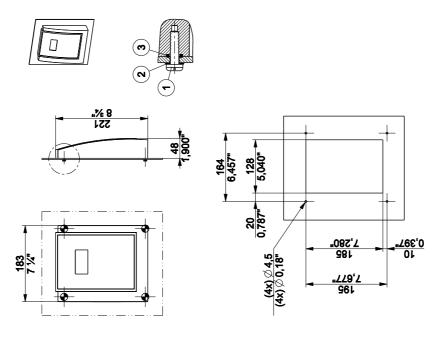


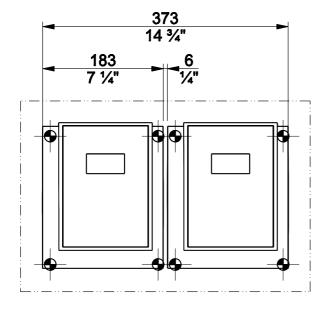




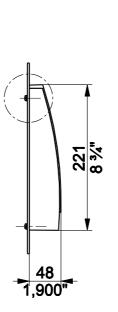


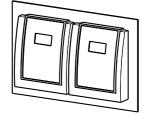
Installation of the front panel on the control cabinet

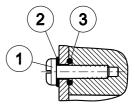


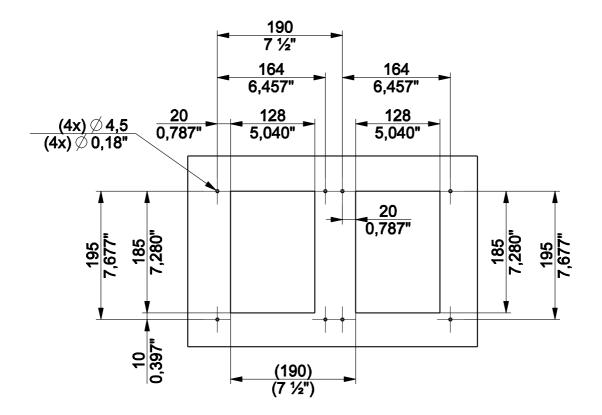


Installation of the front panel on the control cabinet









# 5.3 Commissioning

# 5.3.1 Installation guide

*Commissioning procedure* When the unit has been mounted, the sensor measuring module can be equipped (not applicable to unit version 2). The electrical connections can then be setup in accordance with the required application.

To set applications, refer to 5.3.10 "Setting the applications".

The following table contains the individual commissioning steps in their correct sequence.

More detailed information is contained in the chapters listed in the "Chapter and page reference" column.

Completion of each task can be confirmed in the "Completed" column.



#### Please note

If this installation sequence cannot be complied with, please contact your contractual partner.

| Seq.<br>no. | Task  | Chapter and page reference       | Com-<br>pleted |
|-------------|---|----------------------------------|----------------|
| 1           | Setup electrical connection in accordance with the application.   | 5.3.6<br>Page 148<br>9. Page 267 |                |
| 2           | Install sensor measurement<br>module and, if applicable,<br>connect SiDiSens  |                                  |                |
| 3           | Insert the sensors and connect  | 5.3.3<br>Page 135                |                |
| 4           | Pour in the cell sand<br>(only with DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5/<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool)   | 5.3.2<br>Page 134                |                |
| 5           | Insert fine filter, if membrane<br>sensors are used (only with<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5/DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool/<br>VariaSens) | 5.3.5<br>Page 147                |                |
| 6           | Insert the labeling field in the housing cover  | 5.3.7<br>Page 149                |                |
| 7           | Close the housing cover   | 5.3.8<br>Page 149                |                |
| 8           | Switch the unit on  | 5.3.9<br>Page 150                |                |
| 9           | Set the language  | 5.3.9<br>Page 150                |                |
| 10          | Set the application   | 5.3.10<br>Page 151               |                |
| 11          | If another operating mode is activated, switch to "MANUAL"  | Page 184                         |                |
| 12          | Set the time  | Page 184                         |                |
| 13          | Set the date  | Page 184                         |                |
| 14          | Enter system name<br>(e.g. Control 1)   | Page 184                         |                |
| 15          | Set the trend graphs assignment   | Page 184                         |                |
| 16          | Set module descriptions   | Page 184                         |                |

| Seq.<br>no. | Task   | Chapter and page reference | Com-<br>pleted |
|-------------|--|----------------------------|----------------|
| 17          | Select control mode  | Page 184                   |                |
| 18          | Set dosing output, and adjust positioner running time, Tp, and max. pulses if necessary  | Page 184                   |                |
| 19          | On positioner with feedback<br>calibrate,,Ym".<br>With feedback signals, such as<br>mA signal, 0 – 1V, 5kOhm, the<br>DIP switch S4 must be adjusted<br>on the A&C board. Factory<br>setting: 1kOhm potentiometer | Page 184                   |                |
| 20          | Check setpoint and dosing factor, adjust if necessary  | Page 184                   |                |
| 21          | Check setpoint and dosing source, adjust if necessary  | Page 184                   |                |
| 22          | Check flow rate source, adjust if necessary  | Page 184                   |                |
| 23          | Check flow rate direction, adjust if necessary   | Page 184                   |                |
| 24          | Check control variable 2, adjust if necessary (single feed forward only)   | Page 184                   |                |
| 25          | Check X direction, adjust if<br>necessary (single feed forward<br>only)  | Page 184                   |                |
| 26          | Check X factor, adjust if<br>necessary (single feed forward<br>only)   | Page 184                   |                |
| 27          | Adjust values for Xp and Tn on<br>control loop (single feedback<br>closed-loop control only)   | Page 184                   |                |
|             | Please note  |                            |                |
|             | These values may be optimized later by adaption or manually.   |                            |                |

| Seq.<br>no. | Task   | Chapter and page reference | Compl<br>eted |
|-------------|--|----------------------------|---------------|
| 28          | Adjust values for Tconst and<br>Tvar on control (compound loop<br>only)  | Page 184                   |               |
| 29          | Check max. Lin. corr., adjust if necessary (compound loop only)  | Page 184                   |               |
| 30          | Check control factor, adjust if necessary (compound loop only)   | Page 184                   |               |
| 31          | Check Yout factor, adjust if<br>necessary  | Page 184                   |               |
| 32          | Check measuring range, adjust if necessary   | Page 184                   |               |
| 33          | Check limit values, adjust if necessary  | Page 184                   |               |
|             | Input and output settings:   |                            |               |
| 34          | Check flow rate signal settings<br>such as signal, unit, factor,<br>format, measuring range start<br>and end value, adjust if<br>necessary                   | Page 179                   |               |
| 35          | Check flow rate limit values, adjust if necessary  | Page 179                   |               |
| 36          | Check external set point/dosing<br>factor setting such as signal and<br>factor, adjust if necessary (only if<br>using an external setpoint/dosing<br>factor) | Page 179                   |               |
| 37          | Check limit values for external<br>set point/dosing factor, adjust if<br>necessary (only if using an<br>external setpoint/dosing factor)                     | Page 179                   |               |
| 38          | Check mA signal, adjust if<br>necessary (only if mA output is<br>used)   | Page 179                   |               |
| 39          | Check mA allocation, adjust if<br>necessary (only if mA output is<br>used)   | Page 179                   |               |

| Seq.<br>no. | Task   | Chapter and page reference | Com-<br>pleted |
|-------------|--|----------------------------|----------------|
| 40          | Check settings for digital inputs<br>1 - 2, adjust if necessary  | Page 179                   |                |
| 41          | Configure RS485 interface as required  | Page 179                   |                |
| 42          | Check function of alarms 1 - 4, adjust if necessary  | Page 179                   |                |
| 43          | Configure alarm 1 - 4<br>assignment as required  | Page 179                   |                |
| 44          | Via Mode - Man.Dos., check that<br>all connected actuators and<br>dosing pumps are working<br>properly | Page 179                   |                |
| 45          | Calibrate the fitted sensors after approx. 1 hour running-in time                                      | Page 179                   |                |
| 46          | Switch to operating mode<br>"AUTO"   | Page 198                   |                |
| 47          | Repeat calibration after 24 hours running time   |                            |                |

# 5.3.2 Pour in the cell sand (only with DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 and DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool)



#### Caution!

Before opening the cover on the pressurized version always first release the pressure in the cell body with the drain screw.

- 1 Close the ball valve on the sample water inlet and outlet (pressurized version).
- **2** On the non-pressurized version, remove the protection plugs on the cell body cover of the 3-electrode cells.

On the pressurized version, unscrew the protection plugs on the cell body cover of the 3-electrode cells.

- **3** Fill half a cap from the plastic bottle with cell sand and pour it into the cell body (approx. 1/2 cm<sup>3</sup> cell sand).
- **4** On the non-pressurized version, replace the protection plugs on the cell body cover of the 3-electrode cells.

On the pressurized version, screw the protection plugs on the cell body cover of the 3-electrode cells.



#### Please note

Make sure that the opening (especially the threads in the pressurized version) is clean; rinse with water, if necessary.

**5** Reopen the ball valve on the sample water inlet and outlet (pressurized version).



#### Please note

The system must be recalibrated approx. 4 hours after each time the cell sand is replaced.

The calibration must be checked after one day.

5.

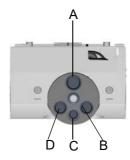
# 5.3.3 Inserting and Connecting Sensors

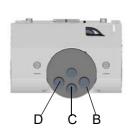


#### Please note

Observe the max. back pressure (pressurized version). Please consult the membrane sensor data sheet for this figure. See chapter 4.2.6 Page 56.

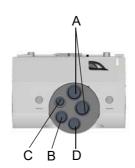
Arrangement of the sensors





Picture 1 DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 Non-pressurized version

Picture 2 DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 Pressurized version

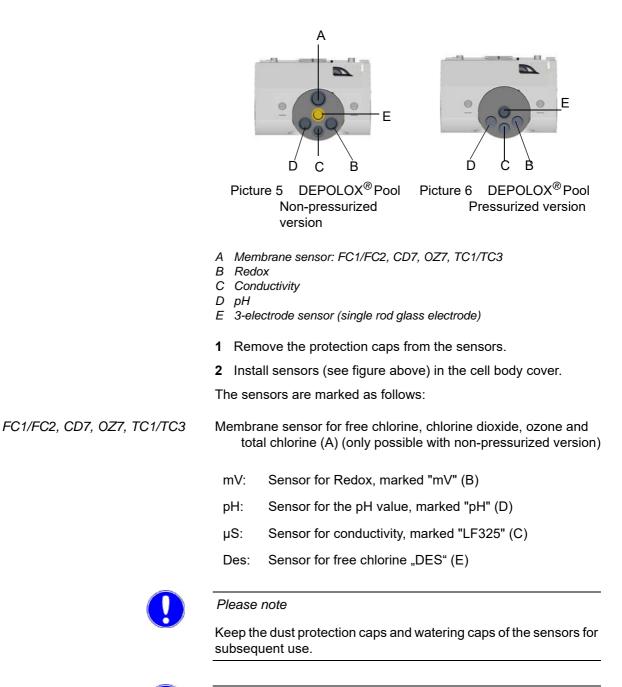




Picture 3 VariaSens nonpressurized version

Picture 4 VariaSens pressurized version

- A Membrane sensor: FC1/FC2, CD7, OZ7, TC1/TC3
- B Redox
- C Fluoride or conductivity
- D pH





#### Please note

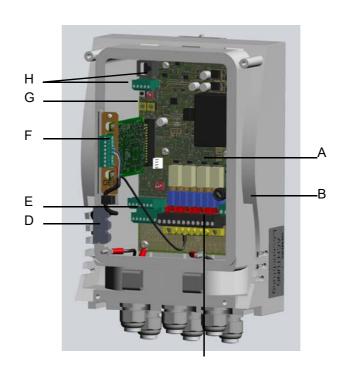
Cable extension:

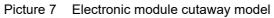
The sensor cable for chlorine, conductivity and total chlorine may be extended to a max. of 50 m.

If the pH, Redox or fluoride sensor cables must be extended (max. 50 m), an impedance converter must be attached to the sensor. The impedance converter converts the very high-resistance sensor signal into a low-resistance signal. Power is supplied to the impedance converter by an installed battery. The life of the battery is approx. 5 years; the impedance converter should be sent to us for battery replacement.

5.

# Arrangement of the plug-in cards and cables





- A A&C Board
- B Housing
- C Relay terminal
- D Sensor cable duct
- E Terminal signal inputs/outputs
  F Sensor measuring module
  G Coding switch A&C board

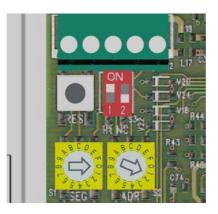
- H Connecting plug or terminal at the front panel board

Connecting the sensor cables

- 1 Place the sensor cables with the attached bushes into the cable ducts of the housing.
- **2** Depending on the sensor design, either plug or screw the cable in place.
- **3** Insert the supplied bushes into ducts that are not in use in order to seal the housing.

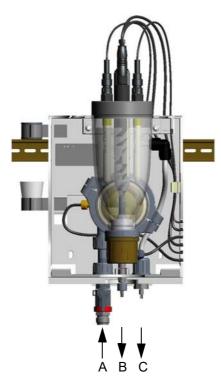
#### Please note

The coding switch of the A&C board may not be changed, as otherwise the functioning of the SFC can no longer be guaranteed. The settings must remain as shown on the following figure.



Picture 8 Settings view

5.3.4



Picture 9 Flow block assembly cross-section

- A Sample water inlet with ball valve
- B Drain on the drain screw
- C Sample water outlet (on pressurized version with ball valve only)

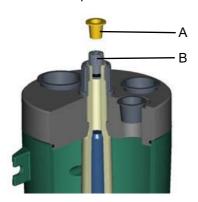
Connecting the sample water and starting up, taking DEPOLOX  $^{\textcircled{B}}$  5 as an example



#### Please note

Before starting the DEPOLOX 5 perform following steps.

Non-pressurized version

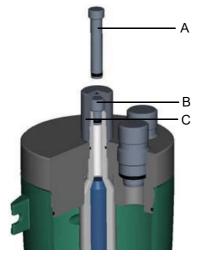


1 Remove the transport plug (yellow) from the electrolyte storage tank and replace with the stopper.

- A Transport plug (yellow)
- B Stopper (with white venting rod)

#### Pressurized version





#### Caution!

The cap must always be in place when the unit is running.

 Remove the transport plugs (long) from the electrolyte storage tank and replace with the short stopper. Then put the cap in place.

- A Transport plug (long)
- B Stopper (short)
- C Cap

Remove felt ring



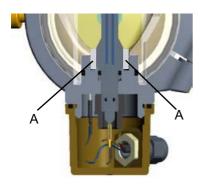
#### Please note

To keep the diaphragm moist and prevent crystallization in the filled electrodes there is a damp felt ring in the gap between the membrane and the electrodes when the unit is in storage.



#### Caution!

The felt ring must be removed before initial startup!



2 Remove the felt ring between the electrodes and the diaphragm.

A felt ring

SFC

Connecting the sample water inlet



#### Please note

Never use copper tubing.

- 1 The pressure in the sample water inlet must always be within a range of min. 0.2 to max. 4 bar. At the same time, the pressure in the sample water inlet must generally be 0.2 bar higher than in the sample water outlet.
  - If the admission pressure is below 0.2 bar, a booster pump must be used (see, examples for sample water extraction with booster pump" Page 144 and Page 145).
  - If the admission pressure exceeds 4 bar, a pressure reducing valve must be used.
- **2** To prevent long loop lag times, ensure that the lines in the sample water inlet are as short as possible.
- **3** An external strainer with a mesh width of 0.5 mm is provided for the sample water inlet.

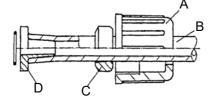
#### With hose connection



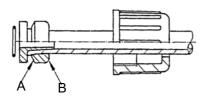
# Please note

The water-tightness of the hose screw connection is only guaranteed if the following installation instructions are followed!

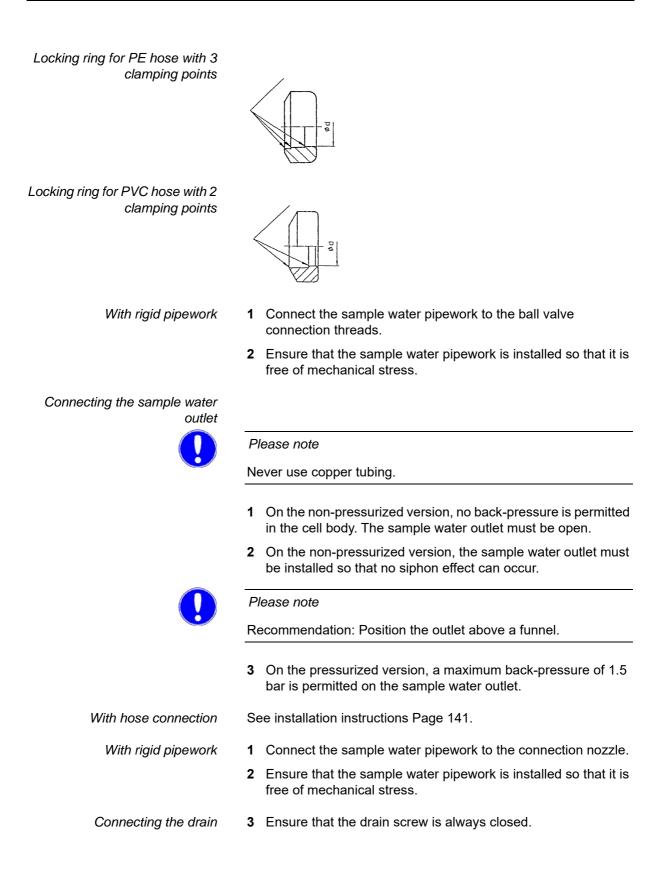
- **1** Release the union nut (A) on the hose screw connection.
- 2 Insert the hose (B) until it hits the hose bushing (D).



- A Union nut
- B Hose
- C Locking ring
- D Hose bushing
- **3** Push the locking ring out until the union nut engages the connecting threads.

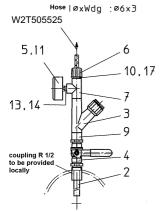


- A 30° pitch on this side
- B Rounding on this side



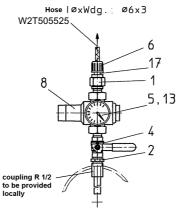
5.

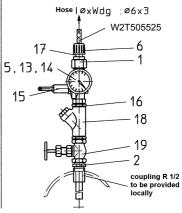




W3T167656: 0.1 – 1 bar W3T167628: 0.15 – 4 bar

# Examples of sample water extraction systems



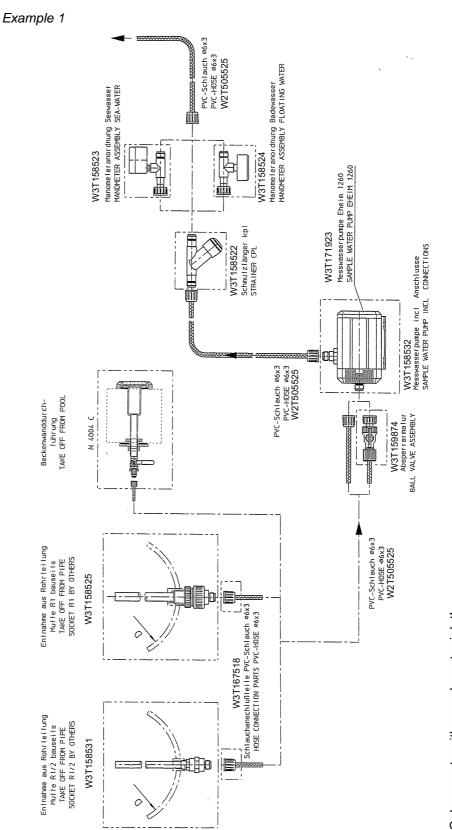


W3T167645: 4 - 16 bar

W3T167421 : 16 - 40 bar

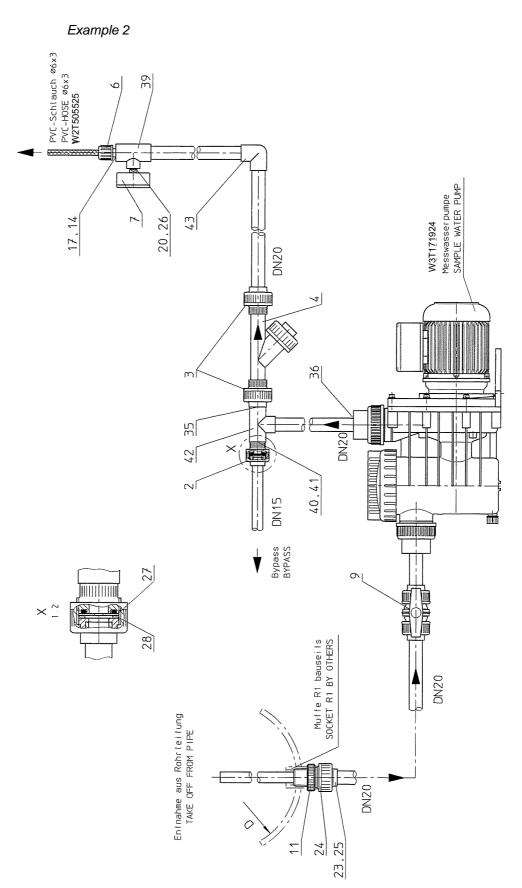
| Item | Part No.  | Description                    |
|------|-----------|--------------------------------|
| 1    | W2T506486 | Pressure gauge bushing         |
| 2    | W3T167416 | Sample pipe                    |
| 3    | W3T171391 | Strainer DN15                  |
| 4    | W3T161902 | Ball valve R 1/2               |
| 5    | W3T173160 | Pressure gauge 0 – 4 bar       |
| 6    | W3T167518 | Hose connection                |
| 7    | W2T507524 | T junction DN15                |
| 8    | W3T165583 | Pressure reducing valve R 1/2" |
| 9    | W2T505339 | Male/female union              |
| 10   | W2T506780 | Reduction                      |
| 11   | W3T173138 | Pressure gauge 0 – 1 bar       |
| 13   | W3T161254 | Flat gasket                    |
| 14   | W3T163500 | Reduction nipple               |
| 15   | W3T169418 | Pressure reducing valve        |
| 16   | W3T163535 | Dual nipple R 1/2              |
| 17   | W3T172948 | Threaded part                  |
| 18   | W3T173148 | Strainer                       |
| 19   | W3T165546 | Needle valve                   |

143



#### Examples for sample water extraction with booster pump

Only operate with sample water inlet!



Only operate with sample water inlet!

| Seq.<br>no. | Quantity | Part No.               | Description   |
|-------------|----------|------------------------|---|
| 2           | 1        | W2T505181              | Screw connection  |
| 3           | 2        | W2T505182              | Screw connection  |
| 4           | 1        | W3T171416              | Strainer complete   |
| 6           | 1        | W3T167518              | Hose connection parts                                       |
| 7           | 1        | W3T173160<br>W3T173198 | Pressure gauge (fresh water)<br>Pressure gauge (salt water) |
| 9           | 1        | W2T505945              | Ball valve  |
| 11          | 1        | W3T163670              | Sample pipe   |
| 14          | 1        | W3T172948              | Threaded part   |
| 17          | 1        | W2T505600              | Reduction   |
| 20          | 1        | W3T163500              | Reduction nipple  |
| 23          | 1        | W2T507288              | Insert  |
| 24          | 1        | W2T506934              | Union nut   |
| 25          | 1        | W3T172720              | O-ring  |
| 26          | 1        | W3T161254              | Flat gasket   |
| 27          | 1        | W3T171146              | Nozzle washer   |
| 28          | 1        | W3T172727              | Flat gasket   |
| 35          | 1        | W3T166090              | Pipe segment  |
| 36          | 2        | W2T506782              | Reducing bush, short  |
| 39          | 1        | W2T506527              | T-piece   |
| 40          | 1        | W3T166089              | Pipe segment  |
| 41          | 1        | W2T506778              | Reducing bush, short  |
| 42          | 1        | W2T507525              | T-piece   |
| 43          | 1        | W2T507535              | Elbow ben   |

parts list Sample water extraction for fresh water part no. W3T158528 Sample water extraction for salt water part no. W3T158529

# 5.3.5 Fitting the fine filter

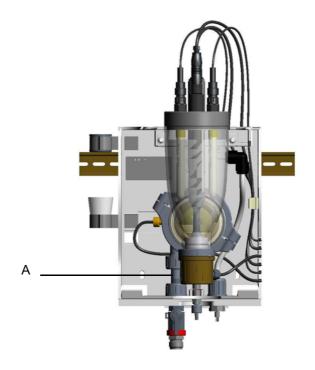
Insert fine filter with the flow through adapters  $DEPOLOX^{@} 5$ , VariaSens and  $DEPOLOX^{@} Pool$ .



#### Please note

A fine filter must only be installed when membrane sensors are employed.

The fine filter is contained in the enclosed accessory set.



#### Picture 10

- A Filter unit (interior)
- 1 Release both knurled nuts.
- 2 Remove complete filter unit.
- **3** Place the fine filter into the filter unit. Ensure that the O-ring is fitted correctly (insert as far as possible).
- 4 Fit the filter unit. Ensure that it is fitted in the correct position.
- 5 Retighten both knurled nuts.

### 5.3.6 Connect the device to the power supply



Only authorized and qualified electricians are permitted to install the device and open the housing. The unit may only be put into operation when the housing is closed, and must be connected to protection earth. Modifications to the device which go beyond those described in this manual are not permissible.



#### Warning!

Warning!

The device is not equipped with a mains switch and is in operation as soon as the supply voltage is applied. An external switch or circuit breaker is therefore necessary.

Provide a mains fuse locally (6 A). The conductor cross section of the mains cable must be at least 0.75 mm (AWG 18). When connecting system components (e.g. devices, motors,

pumps) as well as when entering operating data, the system components must be switched off in order to prevent uncontrolled activation or any incorrect function.



#### Caution!

To ensure safe and correct commissioning, knowledge of the operation, connected electrical load, measurement signals, cable assignment and fuse protection of the connected devices and machines and the relevant safety regulations is required. Commissioning of the device may therefore only be performed by qualified and authorized electricians. Incorrectly connected devices can be damaged, possibly irreparably, or cause faults in other equipment when they are switched on or in operation. Ensure that the measuring and control cables are not confused or make contact with one another. Never connect or disconnect any cables to which voltage is applied!



#### Please note

A line-side fuse (max. 16A) in the main supply line is necessary when connecting to 230 V or 115 V.

Recommendation: Provide an on/off facility for the unit at the installation site. 6A is recommended for the line fuse.

Observe local installation regulations!

Connect system components in accordance with the applicationrelevant wiring diagrams (Chapter 9).

### 5.3.7 Attaching the labeling field

- **1** Select the required labeling field depending on what module is loaded.
- 2 Insert labeling field in the housing cover.

### 5.3.8 Mounting the housing covers

- 1 Ensure that the cable bushes are fitted correctly.
- **2** Carefully fit the housing cover of the electronic module and secure with the four housing screws.
- **3** Carefully place the housing cover onto the flow block assembly and snap into place.



### Please note

Tighten the housing screws to a maximum torque of 0.7 Nm ( $\pm$  0.15 Nm).

### 5.3.9 Switching the device on

Warning!

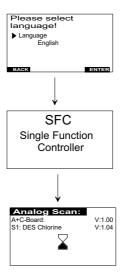


The device is not equipped with a mains switch and is in operation as soon as the supply voltage is applied. When entering operating data it must be taken into account that these could directly influence the connected system components.

Activate the power supply to the device.

The following appear in succession on the graphic display:

During the first commissioning, the language setup menu always appears first. Open the menu with the "Enter" key and set the required language using the up and down arrow keys. Then press "Enter" to confirm the selection. When the country language is set, this screen is no longer shown.



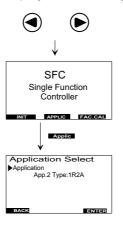
Picture 11 Display is switched on

### 5.3.10 Setting the applications

1 Starting from the basic display, restart the system, by selecting "Reset" under the "System" menu, and then pressing "System Restart" "Yes".

"SFC Single Function Controller" is displayed.

When this appears, press the "left" and "right" arrow keys simultaneously for at least two seconds, in order to obtain the display of the softkey, "Applic".



Picture 12 Application selection

- 2 Press the APPLIC softkey. The "Application Select" menu then appears.
- 3 Confirm the selection with the "ENTER" softkey.
- **4** Another application can be chosen using the "up" and "down" arrow keys (see 4.5 "Applications").
- **5** Select "ENTER" to program the set application. Select "BACK" to return to the basic display.

| 5.3.11                | Positioner calibration with compound-loop-control and single feed back control  |   |
|-----------------------|---|---|
|                       | When connecting a feedback signal, always calibrate the 0 and 100 % positions in order to enable automatic positioning. Calibration can be performed automatically or manually.   |   |
|                       | Only possible with selection of "El.Pos.w.Ym".  |   |
| Automatic calibration | <ol> <li>Ensure that the feedback signal is correctly set on the A&amp;C<br/>board (factory setting 1kOhm potentiometer) see 4.15<br/>"Actuator feedback".</li> </ol>   |   |
|                       | 2 Starting with the basic display in the main menu, open the<br>"Actuator" window from the "Module Type" menu.  |   |
|                       | <b>3</b> Select the parameter "Ym Calibration Auto" and confirm the selection.  |   |
|                       | 4 Select the "Auto" function and confirm the selection.   |   |
|                       | Feedback signal alignment starts automatically.   |   |
|                       | The motor moves to the end positions $Ym = 100$ % and $Ym = 0$ %. The end of the alignment is indicated by the message "Ym calibration was complete". If an error occurs during automatic setting, an error is indicated and the setting is terminated. |   |
|                       | <b>5</b> Press the "OK" softkey to apply the calibration.   |   |
|                       | The runtime determined for the positioner from 0 % to 100 % is automatically entered in the "Dosing" menu under Ty.   |   |
|                       |   | - |



### Please note

If automatic alignment is not successful, perform alignment manually.

| Manual calibration | 1 | Starting with the basic display, open the "Actuator" window from the "Module Type" menu.                                    |
|--------------------|---|---|
|                    | 2 | Select and confirm the parameter "Ym Calibration Manual".   |
|                    | 3 | Open the "000%" menu with the Enter key and close the positioner using the arrow-down key until the limit switch turns off. |
|                    | 4 | Save with the Enter key.  |
|                    | 5 | Open the "100%" menu with the Enter key and open the positioner using the arrow-up key until the limit switch turns off.    |
|                    | 6 | Save with the Enter key.  |



### Please note

There must be a distance of at least 60 % of the total path between the set 0 % position and the 100 % position.

7 Check the position in a second operation:

Select the "MANUAL" operating mode.

Move to various positions via the "MAN.DOS" key and check dosing capacity.

Repeat calibration at 0 % and 100 %, if necessary.

- 8 Determine the running time of the positioner from 0 % to 100 %.
- **9** Enter the determined running time in the "Dosing" menu under Ty.

# 5.3.12 Positioner calibration with SFC (application 3) or single feed forward (application 2)

In these applications the linearization of the control output is possible, such as for example with a gas feeder which has positioner feedback. Here, for example, 30 % control (opening) does not equal 30 % dosing capacity. Calibration of the positioner feedback allows up to eleven dosing capacity points to be aligned, in order to obtain dosing that is as linear as possible.

For this purpose, the number of support points to be calibrated can be selected in the menu "Control" => "Actuator" => "Ym Calib.Points". It is possible to calibrate 2, 3, 6 or 11 support points. The more support points are selected, the more accurate is the dosing.

- Starting from the basic display, select the "Control" => "Actuator" menu.
- In the "Ym Calib.Points" menu, select the number of calibration support points.
- Select the "Ym Calibration.Man" menu and confirm with the Enter key.
- The dosing outputs to be calibrated are shown on the display (max. 11).

| 000% | 0.0   | (calibration point 0 % dosing)   |
|------|-------|----------------------------------|
| 020% | 20.0  | (calibration point 20 % dosing)  |
| 040% | 40.0  | (calibration point 40 % dosing)  |
| 060% | 60.0  | (calibration point 60 % dosing)  |
| 080% | 80.0  | (calibration point 80 % dosing)  |
| 100% | 100.0 | (calibration point 100 % dosing) |

- The calibration points can be selected using the up/down arrow keys. Press Enter to calibrate the support points, and use the up/down arrow keys to open/close the positioner until the actual dosing shown on the dosing capacity indicator (e.g. gas feed inspection glass) agrees with the calibration point (e.g. 20%). Save the value by pressing the Enter key.
- Select the next calibration point and align the actuator position as described.



All calibration points must be aligned or checked in order to obtain linear dosing output.

# SFC

### 5.4 System shut down



### Caution!

Risk of uncontrolled dosing of chlorine or pH-correction medium! Shut down dosing system, close positioner! If the installation site of the flow block assembly is not frost-free, the system must be shut down in due time!

- 1 Switch off the power supply.
- **2** Drain the sample water supply line and drainage line (hold container underneath)
- 3 Empty cell bodies and remove cleaning sand (see Page 223).
- 4 Dismantle the filter housing and the check valve housing.
- **5** When the remaining water has drained from the flow control valve, refit the filter housing and the check valve housing.
- **6** Remove the sensors from the cell body cover and disconnect from the cable.
- 7 Apply a KCI solution to the protection caps of the pH and Redox electrodes and fit onto the electrodes.

### Please note

A "KCI tank to store the sensors" may be used instead of the protection cap for pH and Redox electrodes (see 8. "Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts").

The fluoride electrodes can be stored wet in the short term in a 100 mg/l fluoride solution at pH 7. Fill the electrodes in the tank with 100 mg/l fluoride solution and mount on the electrodes. However, the electrodes should be kept in a dry condition if they are to be stored for several months. In this case, drain the fill solution from the electrode chamber and wash the membrane and chamber with distilled water.

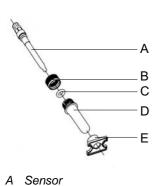
Picture 13 Senor components

8 Store the sensors in a frost-free place.

### Please note

The water must be drained if frost occurs. Insert electrode in a beaker with water and store in a frost-free place.

**9** Procedure for membrane sensors, see 4.2.6 "Membrane sensors".



- B Sealing cap
- C O-ring
- D Tank
- E Stand



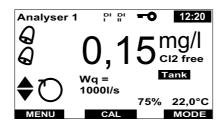
## 6. Operation

### 6.1 Display and operator controls

Graphic display and operating panel

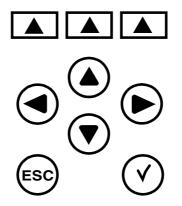
All information is shown on the graphic display with backlight.

The backlight of the display becomes brighter at the touch of a key. Five minutes after the last keyboard entry the brightness reduces to save energy consumption and ensure a longer backlight life.





The SFC is operated using nine keys. The software function is controlled with the top three keys (softkeys).



Picture 2 Operating panel

The exact depiction of individual parameters by the graphic display is described in chapter 6.3 "Menu structure".

| Indicators    |   |
|---------------|---|
| CONTROL 1     | System name (Enter in menu "System" - "Common" - "System<br>name")  |
| DI DI<br>I II | Digital inputs 1, 2 active<br>The symbols indicate that a function has been selected for the<br>digital signal and that a signal is pending (= digital input open). |
| 0             | Password active<br>The defined password must be entered to permit modification of<br>parameters and for calibrating the device.                                     |
| 12.35         | Time  |
| Õ             | Operating mode "AUTO" is active<br>The control unit is running in automatic mode.<br>Dosing is carried out automatically.   |
| \$            | Positioner is started, dosing pump on<br>Positioner stopped, dosing pump on   |
| 15<br>▲       | Pulse pump on, 15 pulses/min in the example   |
| լՈՒ           | Operating mode "MANUAL" is active<br>Dosing can be set manually.  |
| G             | Alarm on<br>upper alarm symbol corresponds to Alarm 1, beneath it are alarms<br>2,4   |
| —             |   |



"System stopped" operating mode Dosing is switched off.



"Adaption" operating mode active during "Automatic" operation Automatic determination of the control parameters for the single feedback closed-loop controller is active.

"Adaption" operating mode active during "Manual" operation Automatic determination of the control parameters for the single feedback closed-loop controller is active.

#### Bar graph

This serves to indicate a measured value, the measuring range (column height), the limit values ( $\blacktriangle$  or  $\checkmark$ ) and the setpoint ( $\triangleright$ ), Wi (internal setpoint), We (external setpoint), Di (internal dosing factor), De (external dosing faktor).

| Softkeys | Current softkey assignments.                       |  |  |
|----------|--|--|--|
| BREAK    | Stop the adaption procedure.                       |  |  |
| SELECT   | Select one or more options from the list provided. |  |  |
| CHANGE   | Change the operating mode.                         |  |  |
| ENTER    | Confirm selection/Save input.                      |  |  |
| CAL      | Select the "Calibration" menu.                     |  |  |
| LOCK     | Activate password protection.                      |  |  |
| MENU     | Select a menu.                                     |  |  |
| MODE     | Select the "Mode" menu.                            |  |  |
| UNLOCK   | Start deactivation of password protection.         |  |  |
| BACK     | Jump back one menu level.                          |  |  |
| >        | Open next diagnosis display.                       |  |  |
| START    | Starts adaption.                                   |  |  |
| 13s      | The time until dosing resumes after interruption.  |  |  |
| ADAPT    | Opens the display for adaption                     |  |  |

|        | 100%        | If the display blinks, the positioner is in manual mode and cannot be activated.  |
|--------|-------------|---|
|        | 28.4°C      | Sample water temperature  |
| mA?    | 1/5         | Error indication active (display bottom right)<br>The system has detected an error. The error can be identified<br>using the table in chapter 6.5 "Errors and remedies". The number<br>combination states the series number of the error message and<br>the total number of error messages (in this example: 1. first error<br>of a total of five).   |
|        | PI 85 s     | YPI stop time display. The time it takes after a spike in the flow rate<br>for the single feedback closed loop control in the compound loop<br>to reactivate.   |
|        |             | Scroll bar<br>This is used to indicate the actual menu position of the menu<br>arrow. If the selection mark is at the top, the menu arrow is on<br>parameter 1 (see example). A maximum of eight parameters per<br>display is possible.   |
|        | TANK        | The SFC provides the option to assign a customer-specific name<br>or designation to each measurement. In the menu "System -<br>Module designation", a text of up to six characters can be defined,<br>e.g. "Inlet", "Main", "Tank" etc. This name is displayed in the main<br>display under the associated measurement. If blanks (default<br>setting) are entered as a module name, it is deactivated and does<br>not appear in the main displays. |
| Genera | al messages | Adaption is currently running!<br>This message appears if an attempt is made during adaption to<br>automatically calibrate the positioner.  |
|        |             | <b>This function is possible in the MANUAL mode only!</b><br>This message appears, for example, if an attempt is made to<br>calibrate the positioner during automatic operation. Acknowledge<br>by pressing ENTER or the ESC key.   |
|        |             | <b>A module has been removed!</b><br>Do you wish to adopt the new configuration?<br>This message appears when the unit is switched on, after a<br>module has been removed. Confirm with the yes/no key.   |
|        |             | <b>New hardware component found!</b><br>This message appears when the device is switched on after<br>addition of a module.  |
|        |             | <b>No data available!</b><br>This message appears when there is no configuration saved on   |

the SD memory card and an attempt is made to load a configuration from the SD memory card.

### No measurement available!

This message appears when the SFC is operated in application 1 or 2 and no senor measuring module has been loaded.

#### Data are not compatible!

This message appears when a configuration is loaded from an SD memory card and may be caused by the following:

- Sensor measuring module different from the current measuring module
- The software version of the front panel board is different from the current version

#### No SD memory card available!

An attempt was made to save a configuration on an SD memory card, but no SD memory card was loaded or the SD memory card is faulty.

#### Function is not possible!

It is not possible to calibrate the positioner feedback at the CAN actuator.



#### Please note

Information about what plug-in card is contained in the device is displayed in the "Analog scan" when the device is switched on or can be viewed statically in the "Diagnosis" menu under "Software Versions" (Display "Diagnosis").



### Softkey

• Activate the function shown on the graphic display over the keys.

### Up

- Move up one level.
- Display the previous option.
- Increase value.

### Down

- Move down one level.
- Display the next option.
- Decrease value.

### Left/right

- Change the column in the menu.
- Change the position in the displayed value (cursor menu).
- Move forwards or backwards by 6 hours in the trend graph.

### Escape

- Cancel input without saving new value.
- Move up one menu level.

### Acknowledgement

- Acknowledge alarm message.
- · Set the running delays to zero.
- Delete adaption error.
- Acknowledge max. dosing time to reactivate dosing.



### 6.2 Notes on operation

During operation observe the following points:

- Check your entries and modifications before exiting the menu.
- Only press the keys with your fingers, never with hard or pointed objects such as pencils, etc. This could damage the sealed keypad.
- *Password* The system runs with up to two passwords to prevent unauthorized access or inadvertent incorrect operation:
  - The system password permits full access to all setting options.
  - The calibration password only permits access to the calibration menu and the display of the menus.

Each password comprises a four-digit number combination.



#### Please note

The password is not set at the works (four zeros).

A calibration password can only be allocated if a system password has been allocated.

If the password protection was not activated with the "LOCK" softkey after entry/calibration, the system activates an automatic lock one hour later.

The password can be changed after correct entry of the existing password.

| Operation | You have the following options starting from the basic display (the |
|-----------|---|
|           | basic display is opened by pressing the "ESC" key in the menu four  |
|           | times):   |

| Switch between the basic displays and trend graphs | Press the up or down key   |
|--|--|
| Select menu  | <ul> <li>Press the "MENU" softkey to select the menu</li> <li>Press the "CAL" softkey to calibrate</li> <li>Press the "MODE" softkey to set the operating mode</li> </ul>  |
| Select a menu item in the menu display             | <ul> <li>Select the menu item with the arrow keys (arrow in front of menu item)</li> <li>Confirm the selection with "ENTER"</li> </ul>   |
| Change/enter displayed<br>parameters               | <ul> <li>Select the parameter with the arrow keys (arrow in front of parameter)</li> <li>Confirm the selection with "ENTER"</li> <li>Change or enter the input values using the arrow keys</li> <li>Save the input with "ENTER"</li> </ul> |
| Cancel entry                                       | • Press the "ESC" key to exit the menu item. Entries which have not been confirmed are reset to their original settings.   |
| Reactivate password<br>protection                  | <ul> <li>This function is only active when a password has been programmed.</li> <li>Change/enter displayed parameters</li> <li>Block the system entry with the "LOCK" softkey in the menu display</li> </ul>                               |
| Exit the menu item                                 | <ul> <li>Press the "ESC" key<br/>or</li> <li>Press the "BACK" softkey</li> </ul>   |

### 6.3 Menu structure

The SFC has various manus:

- Main menu
- Module type, e.g. Cl<sub>2</sub> free 1
- Extern. Functions
- Inputs/Outputs
- Alarms

•

- System
- Diagnosis
- Calibration
- Mode

These depend on the number of sensor measuring modules installed.

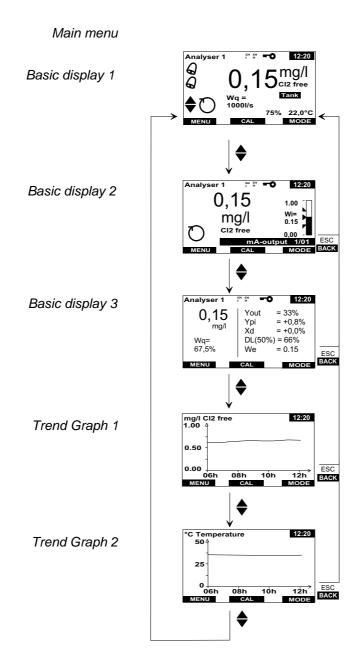
The "Calibration" and "Mode" menus are opened with the corresponding keys directly from the basic display. All other menus can be accessed with the "MENU" softkey.

The following pages show the eight individual menus. The displays contain the settings made at the works.



### Please note

The actual displays on your unit may vary from those illustrated. The displays and menus depend on the number of sensor measuring modules installed and the selected settings.



### Main menu

Basic display 1 Top status line

- System name
- · Digital inputs activated
- Password protection activated
- Time

### Centre display range

- Mode
- Measured value, e.g. free chlorine (mg/l) as a digital display with module designation (optional)
- · Flow rate display Wq
- Alarm relay display
- Control output
- Feed delay (s), e.g., following sample water stop or change of mode from manual to automatic.
- Fault message (instead of positioner feedback, temperature and feed delay)

In the case of several fault messages the display alternates.

• Sample water temperature (°C)

### **Bottom status line**

· Softkey display

### Basic display 2 Top status line

See basic display 1

### Centre display range

- Mode
- Measured value display with bar graph display

### **Bottom status line**

See basic display 1

### Basic display 3 Top status line

See basic display 1

#### Centre display range

- Measured value display
- · Flow rate display
- Controller-specific input/output variables, such as Yout, Ypi, Xd, dosing capacity DL depending on Wq, setpoint value Wi/ We

#### Bottom status line

See basic display 1

Line diagrams (2 max.)

#### Top status line

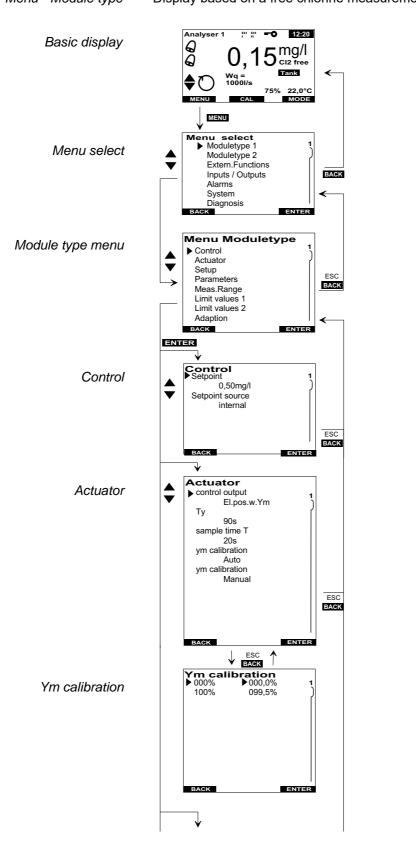
- Unit and type of the selected measurement parameter
  - Date of the displayed diagram

### Centre display range

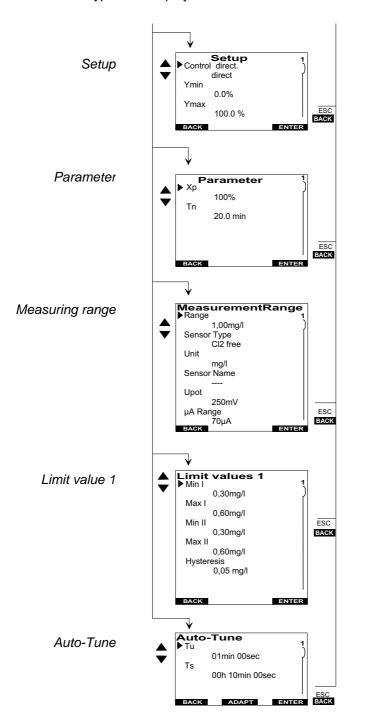
• Six hours line graph (scroll back up to 30 days with option SD memory card)

### **Bottom line**

Softkey display



*Menu - Module type* Display based on a free chlorine measurement example



*Menu - Module type* Display based on a free chlorine measurement example



#### Please note

The displayed menus and selection parameters depend on the number of sensor measuring modules installed and the selected application. All the parameters illustrated here are not displayed at the same time.

Basic display

Menu select

Module type (1) menu Dis

Display of all available menus

Refer to main menu

Display of all available settings for module type 1

#### Control

| Control mode     | Combined/single feed forw/single feed<br>back (combined and single feed forw<br>only available with modules with PC<br>option) |
|------------------|--|
| Setpoint         | Measuring range  |
| Setpoint source  | internal/external/internal if DI 2/external if DI 2  |
| Dosing factor    | 0 – 100 %  |
| Dos. fact source | internal/external/internal if DI 2/external if DI 2  |
| Yout-factor      | 1.0 – 4.0  |

#### Actuator

| El.Pos.w.Ym         |
|---------------------|
| Electr.Pos.wo.Ym    |
| Dosing pump 2P.     |
| Dosing pump 3P.     |
| Solenoid pump 2P.   |
| Solenoid pump 3P.   |
| Analog output 2P.   |
| Analog output 3P.   |
| Dosing contact      |
| 10 s – 180 s (60 s) |
| 10 s – 180 s (90 s) |
| 1 – 20 s            |
|                     |

| Ym calibration   | Auto  |
|------------------|---|
| Ym calibration   | Manual  |
| Ym calib. points | 2, 3, 6, 11   |
| max. Pulse/min   | 100/120/140/160/180   |
| Hysteresis       | Depending on measuring range<br>0.01 – 0.50 / 00.1 – 5.0 / 1 – 50 |
| min. ON          | 1min00s – 59min59s  |

### Setup

| Flow source     | Off/flow measurement |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| Flow direct ion | direct/inverse       |
| Control Input 2 | Off/measurement X    |
| Input direction | direct/inverse       |
| Control direct  | direct/inverse       |
| X factor        | 0,1 - 4,0            |
| Ymin            | 0 – 100 %            |
| Ymax            | 0 – 100 %            |

### Parameter

| Xsh                  | 0,0 – 5,0 %     |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| Tkonst               | 30 s – 10 min   |
| Tvar                 | 30 s – 5 min    |
| Max. lin. correction | 0 – 100 %       |
| Control factor       | 0,1 – 50        |
| Хр                   | 1 – 1000 %      |
| Tn                   | 0,0 – 100.0 min |
| PI shutdown          | 5 – 100 %       |

### Measuring range

| Range start |  | рН | mV |  | mA/V |
|-------------|--|----|----|--|------|

Adjustment of measuring range initial value:

| рН   | 0.00 – 5.00                               |
|------|---|
| mV   | -1000 – +900 (min 100 mV to end<br>value) |
| mA/V | Freely definable                          |

Range end

|  |  | pН | mV |  |  | mA/V |
|--|--|----|----|--|--|------|
|--|--|----|----|--|--|------|

Adjustment of the measuring range end value:

| рН   | 9.00 - 14.00     |
|------|------------------|
| mV   | -900 – +1000     |
| mA/V | Freely definable |

Measuring range

Cl2 Mem F<sup>-</sup> LF

Adjustment of the measuring range:

| Cl <sub>2</sub>             | 100 / 200 / 500 μg/l<br>1.00 / 2.00 / 5.00 / 10.0 / 20.0 / 50.0 /<br>100 / 200 mg/l  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Mem                         | 100 / 200 / 500 μg/l<br>1.00 / 2.00 / 5.00 / 10.0 / 20.0 / 50.0 /<br>100 / 200 mg/l  |
| F <sup>-</sup>              | 2.00 / 5.00 / 20.00 mg/l   |
| LF                          | 2500 μS/cm / 10.00 mS/cm /<br>20.0 mS/cm / 50.0 mS/cm /<br>100.0 mS/cm / 200 mS/cm<br>500 μS/cm                                    |
| Cl <sub>2</sub> /Micro 2000 | 100 / 200 / 500 μg/l<br>1.00 / 2.00 / 5.00 / 10.0 / 20.0 / 50.0 /<br>100 / 200 mg/l<br>20.0 / 10.0 / 5.00 / 2.50 / 2.00 / 1.00 g/l |

| Sensor type | CI2 | Mem |  |  |  |  |
|-------------|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|
|-------------|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|

Definition of the sensor with 3-electrode cells: free  $Cl_2Cl_2^{++}$ ,  $ClO_2$ ,  $O_3$ ,  $KMnO_4$ 

A readily programmable sensor type is also available. This can initially be selected under "\_\_\_\_". In the "sensor name" menu the name of the sensor can be set.

Definition of the sensor with membrane cells: CI-N total, CI-N combined, CIO<sub>2</sub>sel.,  $O_3$ sel., CI<sub>2</sub>free (M)

| Unit            | Cl2 Mem mA/V                     |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| Cl <sub>2</sub> | mg/l, μg/l, ppb, ppm             |
| Mem             | mg/l, μg/l, ppb, ppm             |
| mA/V            | max. 5 free definable characters |

| Sensor name Ci2 |  |
|-----------------|--|
|-----------------|--|

Setting of a customer-specific sensor name, for example, "KMNO $_4$ " with a maximum of seven definable characters.

Selection of the displayed number format for mA/V sensor modules: 000.0 / 00.00 / 0000

| Upot | CI2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|------|-----|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|------|-----|--|--|--|--|--|--|

Adjustment of the potential voltage with 3-electrode cells: 0 - 1000 mV

| µA measuring range <sup>Cl2</sup> <sup>Mem</sup> | 1 |
|--|---|
|--|---|

Select the  $\mu A$  signal measuring range for 3-electrode cells and membrane sensors:

70  $\mu A,\,100$   $\mu A,\,200$   $\mu A,\,1000$   $\mu A$ 

for Micro 2000 and Deox 2000: 10  $\mu A,$  100  $\mu A,$  1000  $\mu A$ 

Signal Cl<sub>2</sub> free



Allocation of the signal used for reading the free  $Cl_2$  value, either CAN external or analog (mA input 1). Only applicable is using a CI-N-sensor.

| Signal |  |  | mA/V |
|--------|--|--|------|

Setting the connected measurement signal: 0 – 20 mA, 4 – 20 mA, 0 – 10 V, CAN external

power supply should be arranged in accordance with this setting (see 9. "Wiring Diagrams")

| Factor |  |  |  | mA/V |
|--------|--|--|--|------|
|        |  |  |  |      |

Factor for adapting an external input signal: 0.1 - 4.0

| Reference temp. |  |  |  |  |  | LF |  |
|-----------------|--|--|--|--|--|----|--|
|-----------------|--|--|--|--|--|----|--|

Adjustment of the reference temperature for the conductivity measurement:  $20^{\circ}C / 25^{\circ}C$ 

| Salt displ. |  |  |  |
|-------------|--|--|--|

| Display    | => NaCl in g/l / NaCl in % / TDS in g/l / off |
|------------|---|
| TDS factor | =>0.4 – 1.0 (if TDS display is active)        |

TDS:

Total Dissolved Solids = filtrate dried solid matter content in g/l The TDS factor depends on the composition of the sample water and must be determined for each water type.

LF

### Limit value 1

| Min I      | within measuring range   |
|------------|--|
| Max I      | within measuring range   |
| Min II     | within measuring range   |
| Max II     | within measuring range   |
| Hysteresis | Depending on measuring range<br>0.01 – 0.25 / 00.1 – 05.0 / 1 – 50 |

### Limit value 2

| Min You/Ym  | 0 – 100.0 % (not with single feedback closed loop control)   |
|-------------|--|
| Max Yout/Ym | 0 – 100.0 % (not with single feedback<br>closed loop control)<br>Ym is only output when positioner<br>feedback is available, otherwise the<br>controller output Yout |
| Hysteresis  | 0.1 – 5.0 %  |
| Min Ypi     | 0 – 100 % (only with compound loop)  |
| Max Ypi     | 0 – 100 % (only with compound loop)  |
| Hysteresis  | 0.1 - 5.0 % (only with compound loop)  |

### Adaption

Adaption is only available for single feedback closed loop control "DES" modules.

| Tu | 1 – 3600 s (60 s)        |
|----|--------------------------|
| Ts | 0,1 – 480.0 min (10 min) |

| Menu - Module type |  |
|--------------------|--|
|--------------------|--|



#### Please note

The displayed menus and selection parameters depend on the number of sensor measuring modules installed and the selected application. All the parameters illustrated here are not displayed at the same time.

Basic display Refer to main menu

Menu select

Display of all available menus

Module type (2) menu

Display of all available settings for module type 2

Control

| Control output | OFF   |
|----------------|---|
|                | Dosing contact  |
| Hysteresis     | Depending on measuring range<br>0.01 – 0.50 / 00.1 – 5.0 / 1 – 50 |
| min. ON        | 1min00s – 59min59s  |

Setup

| Control direct | direct/inverse |
|----------------|----------------|
|----------------|----------------|

Measuring range

Range start

рН

Adjustment of measuring range initial value:

| рН | 0.00 – 5.00 |
|----|-------------|
|----|-------------|

Range end

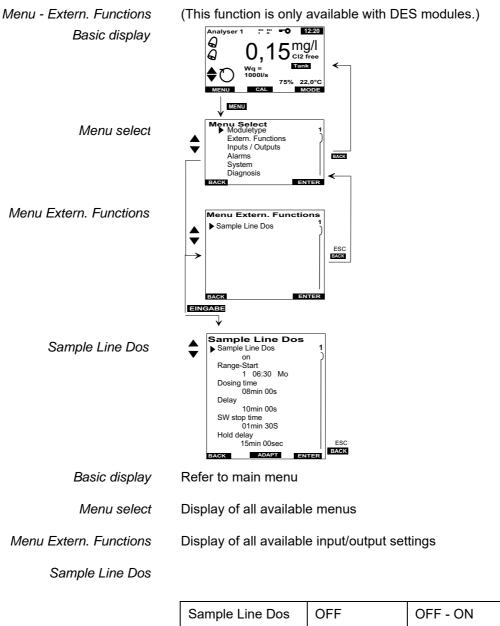
рН

Adjustment of the measuring range end value:

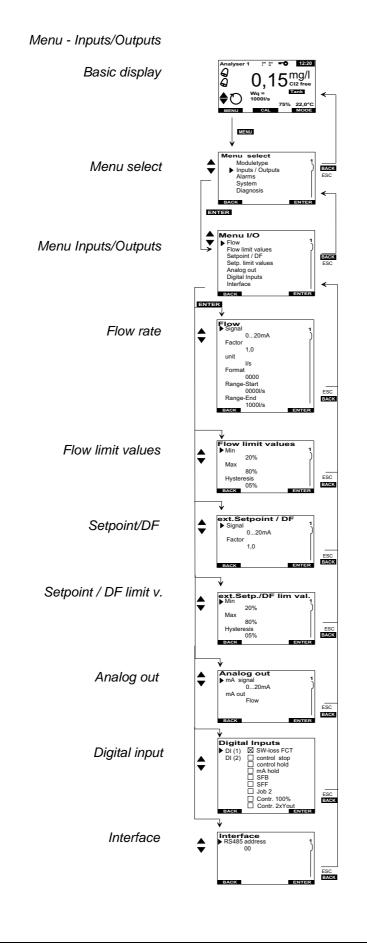
| рН | 9.00 - 14.00 |
|----|--------------|
|----|--------------|

Limit value

| Min        | within measuring range   |
|------------|--|
| Max        | within measuring range   |
| Hysteresis | Depending on measuring range<br>0.01 – 0.25 / 00.1 – 05.0 / 1 – 50 |



| Sample Line Dos | OFF           | OFF - ON   |
|-----------------|---------------|--|
| Range-Start     | 1: 00:00      | 9 start times, can be<br>programmed by day of<br>the week or the same<br>start time can be used<br>for several days, e.g.<br>1:06:30 MON-SUN |
| Dosing time     | 00 min 30 sec | 30 sec - 20 min  |
| Delay           | 00 min 00 sec | 0 30 min   |
| SW stop time    | 01 min 30 sec | 1 min 30 sec - 59 min 59<br>sec (always at least<br>dosing time + 1 min)   |
| Hold delay      | 15 min 00 sec | 0 - 20 min   |



### Menu - Inputs/Outputs

| Basic display          | Refer to main menu                             |
|------------------------|--|
| Menu select            | Display of all available menus                 |
| Menu<br>Inputs/Outputs | Display of all available input/output settings |

# Flow rate

| Signal      | 0 – 20 mA, 4 – 20 mA                        |
|-------------|---|
| Factor      | 0,1 - 4,0                                   |
| Format      | Measurement display 000.0 / 00.00 /<br>0000 |
| Unit        | Max. 5 digits (any combination)             |
| Range-Start | Freely definable                            |
| Range-End   | Freely definable                            |

### Flow limit values

| Min        | Min limit value within measuring range |
|------------|--|
| Max        | Max limit value within measuring range |
| Hysteresis | 0,1 - 5,0 %                            |

### Setpoint/DF

| Signal | 0 – 20 mA, 4 – 20 mA, Off |
|--------|---------------------------|
| Factor | 0,1 – 4,0                 |

### Setpoint / DF limit v.

| Min        | Min. limit value of the external signal input 0 – 100.0 % |
|------------|---|
| Max        | Max. limit value of the external signal input 0 – 100.0 % |
| Hysteresis | 1 – 25 %  |

### Analog out

| mA signal | 0 – 5 mA, 0 – 20 mA, 4 – 20 mA,<br>0 – 10 mA, off   |
|-----------|---|
| mA        | Measured value sensor module, flow,<br>ext. setpoint/DF, Yout/Ym, Ypi<br>Measurement value SiDiSens (if<br>available) |

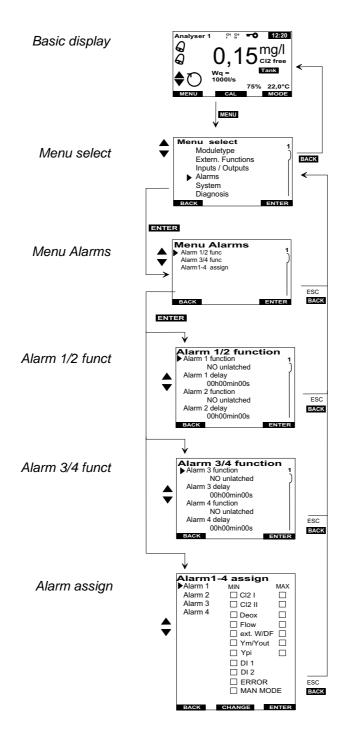
# Digital input

| DI (1), DI (2)                    | Every digital input can be assigned a function.  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| SW-LOSS FCT<br>(only with DI (1)) | Yout = 0 %, dosing, mA continuous =<br>0 % if DI is activated, the feed stops<br>after the preset sample water delay. If<br>DI is deactivated, the feed starts after<br>the preset feed delay. See Menu -<br>System - Safety |
| CONTROL.STOP                      | Yout = 0%, dosing, mA continuous = 0%  |
| CONTROL.HOLD                      | Yout remains constant, i.e., the control signals are kept constant.  |
| MA HOLD                           | All mA outputs remain unchanged, while DI is active.   |
| SFF                               | If the DI is active, the control mode switches to single feed forward.   |
| SFB                               | If the DI is active, the control mode<br>switches to single feedback closed loop<br>control.   |
| JOB 2                             | If the DI is active, the device switches to the settings of configuration 2.   |
| CONTR. 100 %                      | If the DI is active, the controller output switches to Yout = 100 %.   |
| CONTR. 2x Yout                    | If the DI is active, the controller output<br>Yout is doubled.   |

## Interface

| RS485 address | Bus addresses 00 – 31 (0) |
|---------------|---------------------------|
|               |                           |

Menu - Alarm



| Basic display | Refer to main menu                |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| Menu select   | Display of all available menus    |
| Menu Alarms   | Display of all available settings |

Alarm 1/2 funct

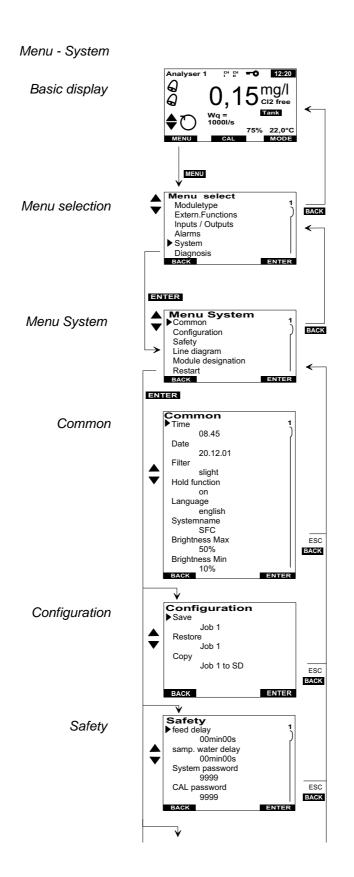
| Alarm 1 function | Defines the contact condition of the<br>alarm relay, if the alarm is not active.<br>N.O. unlatched<br>N.C. unlatched<br>N.O. latched res<br>N.C. latched res<br>N.O. latched ack<br>N.C. latched ack |
|------------------|--|
| Alarm 1 delay    | 00:00 – 10:00 h ON delay   |
| Alarm 2 function | See description of alarm 1   |
| Alarm 2 delay    | See description of alarm 1   |

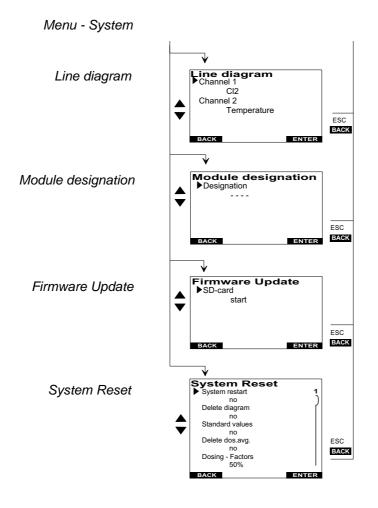
## Alarm 3/4 funct

| Alarm 3 function | See description of alarm 1 |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| Alarm 3 delay    | See description of alarm 1 |
| Alarm 4 function | See description of alarm 1 |
| Alarm 4 delay    | See description of alarm 1 |

*Alarm assign.* 1/2/3/4 This parameter gives the option of defining the switching conditions for the alarms:

Min I and Max I of the measurement of the sensor module Min II and Max II of the measurement of the sensor module Min and max of the SiDiSens (if available) Min and Max of the SO<sub>2</sub>measurement with Deox application Min and Max of the flow Min and Max of the external setpoint/dosing factor Min and Max of the controller output Yout or Ym Min and Max of the controller output Ypi DI (1) DI (2) ERROR MAN MODE





Menu - System

| Basic display | Refer to main menu |
|---------------|--------------------|
| Dublo ulopluy |                    |

Menu selection Display of all available menus

Menu System Display of all available system settings

General

| Time (hh:mm)                  | Current time   |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Date (dd.mm.yy)               | Current date   |
| Measure. filter <sup>1)</sup> | Off / low / high   |
| Hold function                 | Off/On<br>(Keeps the measured value constant<br>during calibration)                      |
| Language                      | German, English, French, Dutch, Polish   |
| System name                   | 12 characters; each with character set<br>A-Z and digits 1-9 incl. special<br>characters |
| Brightness max                | Setting the backlight brightness for<br>operation 10% (min) 100% (default<br>50%)        |
| Brightness min                | Setting the backlight brightness for idle period 10% Max (default 10%)                   |



#### Please note

At increasing lifespan the backlight brightness drops. The backlight brightness can be adapted to the respective ambient conditions or to other systems.

Automatic reduction of the backlight of the display.

To avoid reducing the lifespan of the backlight unnecessarily, automatic reduction of the backlight is activated by default. In this way five minutes after the last keyboard entry the brightness of the backlight is reduced from max. brightness to min. brightness. To deactivate this function, both brightness values can be set to the same percentage (not recommended).

# Configuration

| Save    | Gives the option of saving all device<br>settings, including the application, as<br>Job 1 or Job 2  |
|---------|---|
| Restore | Gives the option of restoring saved or<br>stored configurations. The current menu<br>settings are overwritten in the process.<br>Job 1 or Job 2   |
| Сору    | If an SD memory card is installed, the<br>configurations Job 1 and Job 2 can be<br>copied to and from the SD memory<br>card.<br>The current operating configuration<br>(act.) can also be copied.<br>Job 1 to SD<br>Job 2 to SD<br>SD to Job 1<br>SD to Job 2<br>act. to SD-Job 1<br>act. to SD-Job 1<br>act. to SD-Job 2<br>SD-Job 1 to act.<br>SD-Job 2 to act. |

# Safety

| feed delay <sup>2</sup> )       | 00:00 – 10:00 (03min : 00s)  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Samp. water delay <sup>3)</sup> | 00:00 – 10:00 (01min : 00s)<br>(sample water delay)                                      |
| System password                 | four-digit numeric code<br>(activate with softkey "LOCK" in the<br>"Menu Select" window) |
| Calib password*                 | four-digit numeric code<br>(activate with softkey "LOCK" in the<br>"Menu Select" window) |

\* only if system password is set

## Trend Graph

| channel 2 t<br>v<br>b<br>r<br>r<br>r<br>r<br>r<br>r<br>v<br>v<br>r<br>f<br>s<br>s<br>l | Assignment of a measured value to the<br>trend graph. The selected measured<br>value is plotted in the trend graph (can<br>be traced back up to 30 days if the SD<br>memory card is installed, without the SD<br>memory card from 0 to 24 hours).<br>The measurement value of the sensor<br>measurement module, measurement<br>value of the SiDiSens (if available), flow<br>rate Wq, external set point/dosing<br>factor, temperature, Yout control<br>signals, can be entered.<br>If the setting "Off" is selected, the<br>relevant channel is not logged. |
|--|--|



## Please note

If Ym is available, the Ym value is displayed instead of Yout.

## Module designation

| Module | Max. 7 characters, customer-specific<br>input<br>If blanks are entered, the module<br>designation is switched off. |
|--------|--|
|        | The designation is shown on the main display beneath the unit.   |

## System reset

| System Restart <sup>4)</sup>  | yes/no    |
|-------------------------------|-----------|
| Delete graph <sup>5)</sup>    | yes/no    |
| Standard values <sup>6)</sup> | yes/no    |
| Delete dos.avg <sup>7)</sup>  | yes/no    |
| Dosing Factors <sup>8)</sup>  | 0 – 100 % |



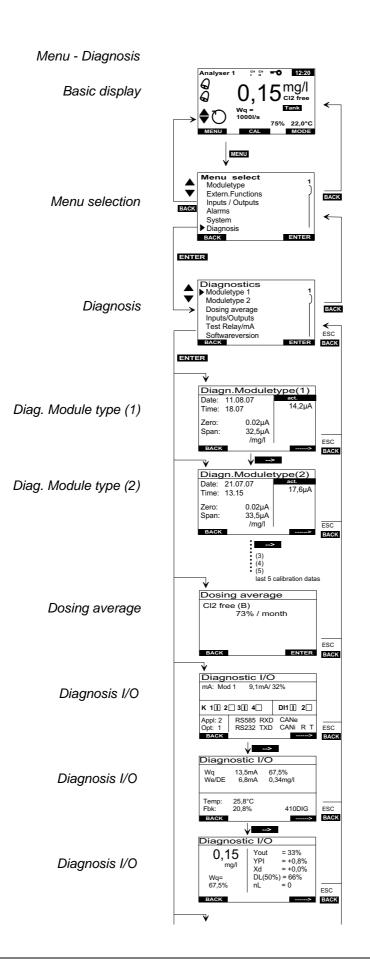
#### Please note

The system settings marked with 1) to 8) are explained below.

Operation

6.

|                                 | Explanation of system settings   |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <sup>1)</sup> Measure. filter   | The measurement filter serves to compensate measurement value fluctuations in the event of irregular measurement value signals.  |
| <sup>2)</sup> Feed delay        | The feed delay delays the start of dosing when the unit is switched<br>on and when the operating mode has been changed. The selected<br>delay time can be cancelled by pressing the "Acknowledge" key. |
| <sup>3)</sup> Samp.water delay  | The sample water delay (DI 1) determines the time after which dosing is deactivated, e.g., in the event of a sample water stop. DI 1 flashes while the delay time is running.                          |
| <sup>4)</sup> System restart    | When the applications are changed, the device must be restarted using System restart.  |
| <sup>5)</sup> Delete graph      | The stored measured values of the trend graph are deleted.   |
| <sup>6)</sup> Standard values   | Deletes customer settings (except for the selected application), resets system to factory settings. The sensors must be recalibrated.  |
| <sup>7)</sup> Delete dos.avg    | The dosing average is set to zero.   |
| <sup>8)</sup> Delete DL diagram | Resets the dosing factor table to the set value and all training meters to zero.   |



| Menü - Diagnose         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Diagn. Dosing factors   | V           Diagn.Dosingfactors           Wq/% DL/%         N           5         6,5         0           10         8,5         10         35         33,5           20         8,6         33         45         46,6         233  |
| Diagn. Dosing factors   | 25 23,8 480 50 53,8 480 ESC<br>BACK BACK<br>Wq/% DL/% N Wq/% DL/% N<br>55 55,3 269 80 80,3 96<br>60 57,5 560 85 83,5 80<br>65 63,8 535 90 88,8 43<br>70 68,6 233 95 95,2 13  |
| Diagnosis Dosing factor | 75 75,8 180 100 97,8 2<br>BACK<br>Diagnost.Dosingfactor<br>100<br>D 50<br>L  |
| Test Relay/mA           | 0     2'5     5'0     7'5     ¥vq       BACK     BACK       ESC       BACK         Test Relay/mA       Relay     K1       K2       K3       K4       mA-Outp.       25%  |
| Software Versionen      | BACK         SELECT         ENTER         ESC           BACK         BACK         BACK         BACK           Software Version         V: 01.06         EAE1057         17.02.2009 / 15: 57: 53         Ci : A+C-Board V:1.01           M1:         Bare Elect. CI2         V:1.03         Ci : et/Hord         V: 01.06   |
|                         | Ce :         pH input         V:1.00         ESC           BACK        >         BACK           Sensor INFO         Modul ID:         0x10           Version:         V:1.03         Option:         00  |
|                         | BACK BACK<br>BACK BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK<br>BACK |

Menu - Diagnosis

Basic display Refer to main menu

Display of all available menus

Scroll with softkey "-->"

Display of all available diagnosis displays

Menu selection

Diagnosis

Diagnose module type (1-5) For example Cl<sub>2</sub>

Calibration data of 3electrodesensor for  $Cl_2$ ,  $KMnO_4$ ,  $O_3$ ,  $ClO_2$ ,  $Cl_2$ ++ Calibration data with date and time of the last 5 calibrations (1-5)

| zero | Zero point signal of the measuring cell |
|------|---|
| span | µA-signal based on 1 mg/l               |
| act. | current µ A-sensor signal               |

pH calibration data

Date and time of the last 5 calibrations

| pH7     | Signal offset with pH 7 in mV                     |
|---------|---|
| Span/pH | mV-signal of the pH sensors based on<br>1 pH step |
| Offs    | Manual offset in pH (menu 2.1.2 -<br>Offset pH)   |
| act.    | current mV sensor signal                          |

Redox calibration data

Date and time of the last 5 calibrations

| Offset | Signal offset of the mV sensor in mV |
|--------|--------------------------------------|
| act.   | current mV sensor signal             |

Membrane sensor calibration

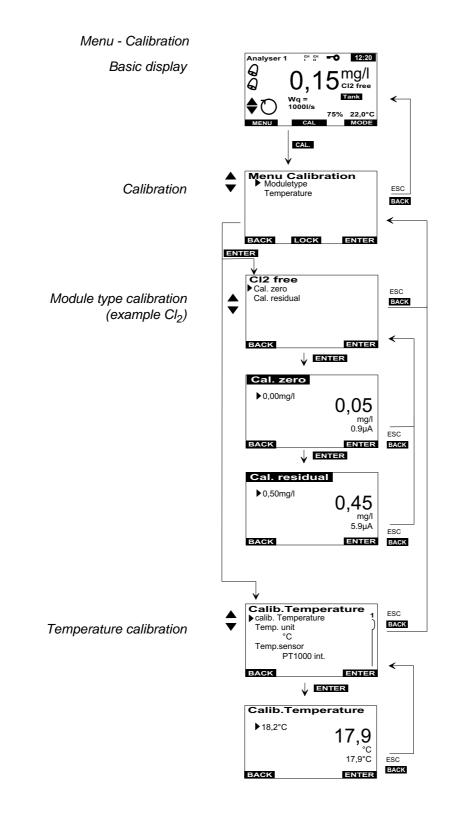
data Cl tot, O<sub>3</sub> sel, ClO<sub>2</sub> sel, Cl comb, Cl<sub>2</sub> free Date and time of the last 5 calibrations

| zero | Zero point signal of the membrane sensor (only with 2-point calibration mode, not with $Cl_2$ tot) |
|------|--|
| span | μA-signal based on 1 mg/l  |
| act. | current µ A-sensor signal  |

192

| F <sup>−</sup> calibration data    | Date and time of the last 5 calibrations                         |  |  |
|------------------------------------|--|--|--|
|                                    | Zero   | Established zero point signal of the sensor  |  |
|                                    | Decade   | mV signal of the sensor based on 1 decade (log)                                      |  |
|                                    | act.   | current mV signal of the sensor  |  |
| Conductivity calibration data      | Date and time of the la  | st 5 calibrations  |  |
|                                    | Span   | Calibration factor of the conductivity measuring cell                                |  |
|                                    | act.   | Displays the current sensor power in<br>mA<br>Displays the current sensor voltage in |  |
|                                    |  | mV<br>Displays the current temperature of the<br>conductivity sensor                 |  |
| Diagnosis dosing average           | Displays the dosing ave<br>month                                 | erage of the previous hour, day, week,   |  |
| Inputs/Output diagnosis            | Information on   |  |  |
|                                    | Assignment of the n  | nA output  |  |
|                                    | The current mA outp  |  |  |
|                                    | The current circuit s     Relay off I Relay                      |  |  |
|                                    | The selected applic  | ation  |  |
|                                    | <ul> <li>Display the option (<br/>without process con</li> </ul> | Opt = 1 -> with process control, Opt = 0 -><br>trol)                                 |  |
|                                    | <ul> <li>The send/receive st<br/>external and CAN ir</li> </ul>  | ate of the interfaces RS485, RS232, CAN nternal                                      |  |
|                                    | • The current circuit s  | tates of digital inputs 1 and 2  |  |
| Second display -<br>Inputs/Outputs |  |  |  |

| Third display -<br>Inputs/Outputs | Information on   |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>1</b>                          | Measured value module  |
|                                   | compound loop Yout in %  |
|                                   | Ypi-share of Yout in %   |
|                                   | Control deviation Xd in %  |
|                                   | <ul> <li>Dosing capacity (DL) in % acc. to the current flow rate from the<br/>dosing factor table</li> </ul>   |
|                                   | <ul> <li>nL delay until new DL value is accepted in the dosing factor<br/>table (entry at 120)</li> </ul>  |
| Diagnost.Dosingfactor             | Displays the learned DL dosing factors for the compound loop output depending on Wq (display in 5 % increments). N describes the training meter, how often a dosing factor was learned for this Wq value. This table can be displayed as a diagram (toggle with the $\_\_\_\_$ key). |
| Test relay/mA                     | This menu enables the manual switching on and off of the relay outputs and also manual simulation of the mA output signals from 0100% (0/4 20mA) for test purposes. Exiting this menu clears the manual settings again.  |
| Software versions                 | Displays the software versions of the front panel boards of the sensor measurement module and the A&C boards   |



195

| Menu - Calibration | Refer to 6.4 "Calibration". |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| Basic display      | Refer to main menu          |

Display of all available calibration options

Module type calibration Cl<sub>2</sub> free, Cl<sub>2</sub>++, ClO<sub>2</sub>, O<sub>3</sub>, KMnO<sub>4</sub>

Calibration

| Cal. zero     | with softkey "ENTER" the display is set to "0.00 mg/l" |
|---------------|--|
| Cal. residual | within measuring range                                 |

Module type pH calibration

| Calibrate pH7    | 6.85 – 7.15 pH         |
|------------------|------------------------|
| pH calibration   | within measuring range |
| Corr. pH         | -1,00 – +1.00 pH (0pH) |
| Cal. at temp.    | 0 – 50°C               |
| Man. temp. comp. | 0 – 50°C               |
|                  |                        |

#### Module type mV calibration

| Cal. ORP | within measuring range |
|----------|------------------------|
|----------|------------------------|

Fluoride calibration

| Cal. low value  | within measuring range |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| Cal. high value | within measuring range |

Module type calibration Conductivity

| Calib              | 0 – 200 mS/cm |
|--------------------|---------------|
| Calib. temperature | 0 – 50 °C     |

Module type calibration Membrane sensors  $CIO_2$ ,  $O_3$  sel,  $Cl_2$  free

| Zero span/DPD    | within measuring range |
|------------------|------------------------|
| Calib. span      | within measuring range |
| Calibration mode | 1-point/2-point        |

Membrane sensor calibration Cl tot

| Calib. total | within measuring range |
|--------------|------------------------|
|--------------|------------------------|

# Membrane sensor calibration Cl comb.

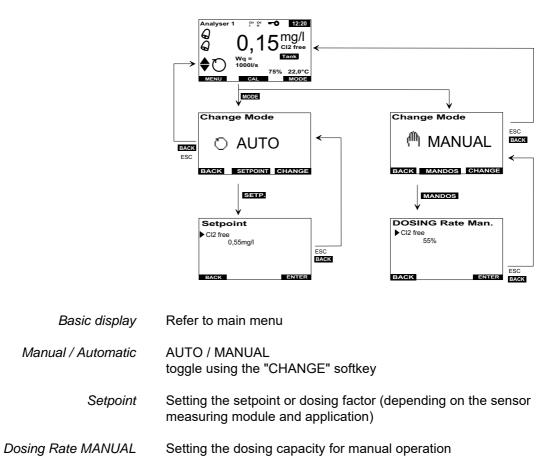
| Calib. total    | within measuring range |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| Calib. combined | within measuring range |

mA/V input calibration

| Cal. zero | within measuring range |
|-----------|------------------------|
| Cal. span | within measuring range |

Temperature calibration

| Calib. temperature | 0 – 50°C   |
|--------------------|--|
| Temp. Unit         | °C/°F  |
| Temp. sensor       | Switching automatic temperature<br>compensation on or off, selection of the<br>internal temperature sensor<br>(temperature input A&C board), or<br>sensor measuring module<br>(temperature input sensor measuring<br>module option). With the PT1000<br>switched off, a manual temperature<br>value can be entered in the calibration<br>menu when a pH measurement is<br>taken. |



# SFC

# Smooth switching between operating modes

| Switching from automatic to<br>manual or from manual to<br>automatic mode | To switch smoothly from automatic to manual mode or from manual to automatic mode while maintaining the same dosing capacity: |  |
|---|---|--|
| AUTO -> MANUAL  | seconds to apply  | e <b>CHANGE</b> softkey for approx. 2 - 3<br>the current dosing capacity in manual mode.<br>hes to "Dosing capacity MANUAL".           |
|   | The dosing capa   | city can now be set manually.  |
| MANUAL -> AUTO  | seconds to apply mode.  | e <b>CHANGE</b> softkey for approx. 2 - 3<br>the current dosing capacity in automatic<br>rou wish to use the current dosing capacity?" |
|   | unchanged.  | nfirm and leave the current dosing capacity<br>inge the dosing capacity.   |

# Description of the operating modes

*MANUAL* Dosing is not automatically controlled in the MANUAL mode. The values must be continuously monitored.

The MANUAL mode is used:

- In the event of any possible system faults
- during maintenance/cleaning work or while checking the system



#### Please note

The MANUAL mode leads to:

The pumps are off, the positioner remains in its current position, if necessary unlock the positioner and close either by hand or with the Man.dos. menu.

AUTOMATIC Automatically controls the measured variables acc. to the selected application

- *STOP* STOP mode is automatically activated:
  - When the sample water flow is faulty
  - When a stop signal is received via the digital inputs

After activation:

- Pumps off, positioner closed, mA analog output 0 % If the stop conditions are no longer active, the system automatically switches to automatic mode.
- ADAPTION ADAPTION mode is activated, if the adaption is started for the Cl<sub>2</sub> single feedback closed-loop control.

For more details concerning adaption, refer to 4.9 "Adaption".

# 6.4 Calibration

Sensor measuring module calibration



#### Caution!

With the pressurized version, when calibrating the sensor modules

pH value Redox voltage Conductivity Fluoride membrane sensors for free chlorine, chlorine dioxide, ozone and Total chlorine

the following tasks must also be completed:

Before calibration: Close the ball valves on the inlet and outlet. Depressurize the unit. To do this, briefly open and close the drain.

After calibration: Open the inlet and outlet.



#### Caution!

The electrode fingers or membranes on the sensors are extremely sensitive! Do not touch, soil or damage them.



#### Caution!

Note the safety data sheets for buffer solutions.



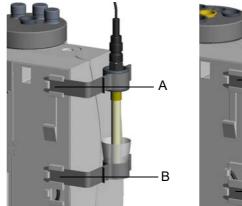
#### Please note

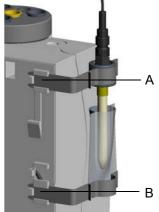
To prevent the output of incorrect control signals during calibration, the "Hold function" in the system menu should be set to "On". mA outputs and the controller output then remain constant, as long as a calibration menu is open.

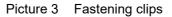
To find out how often you must calibrate, refer to 7.1 "Maintenance Schedules".

Calibration aids of the flow rate module DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5, DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool, VariaSens Two clips are installed in the housing cover. These clips can be inserted into the rear panel of the housing.

The clip (A) for the sensor will be inserted into the upper catch. When the electrodes are calibrated in the beaker with the calibration solution, the second clip (B) will be inserted into the middle catch (left figure). The lower clip position is provided for calibrating with the calibration solution bag (right figure).







- A Upper clip
- B Lower clip

## 6.4.1 Temperature calibration

- 1 Starting from the basic display in the main menu select the "Calibration" menu.
- 2 Select the "Temperature" menu item

The window "Calib. temperature" appear on the graphic display.

- 3 Select the "Cal. temperature" parameter.
- 4 Perform comparative temperature measurement.
- **5** Open the menu with the "Enter" key and enter the ascertained value with the arrow keys.
- **6** Save the value by pressing the "Enter" key.

This concludes the temperature calibration.



#### Please note

It is possible to select °C or °F in the "Temp. unit" menu. The required temperature input can be selected or switched off in the "Temp. sensor" menu.

6.4.2

|                        | calibration  |
|------------------------|--|
|                        | Calibration of the 3-electrode cell for $Cl_2$ , $KMnO_4$ , $O_3$ , $ClO_2$ and $Cl_2$ ++ (pH-compensated).  |
|                        | Before Cl <sub>2</sub> ++ calibration, it must be ensured that the pH measurement is calibrated correctly.   |
|                        | During calibration of the 3-electrode cell, perform a zero point<br>calibration and a measurement value calibration (DPD).<br>The calibration process is nearly the same for chlorine, chlorine<br>dioxide, ozone and potassium permanganate.<br>The difference lies in the fact that some of the reagents are<br>measured with a photometer and others with a colour meter. |
| Zero point calibration | 1 Starting from the basic display in the main menu select the "Calibration" menu.  |
|                        | 2 Select the measurement to be calibrated from the menu, e.g. Cl <sub>2</sub> free.  |
|                        | 3 Select the "Cal. zero" parameter.  |
|                        | 4 Close the ball valve on the sample water inlet.  |

3-electrode cell (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 and DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool)

#### Please note

When the sample water supply has been stopped, the display first drops rapidly, and after approximately one minute slowly approaches zero. During commissioning it is essential to wait for 5 minutes, even if the display is already blinking or stands at "0.00" after a few seconds.

- **5** Wait until the displayed value or the μA-sensor signal no longer changes for at least one minute.
- 6 Press the "ENTER" softkey to set the display to zero and press "Enter" again to save the value.
- **7** Press the softkey "Back".
- 8 If disinfectant-free water (e.g. by switching off the dosing system) is available, zero point calibration can be performed with it. To do this, switch off the dosing system and perform steps 1, 2, 3, 5 and 6. The delay times for sample water extraction and dosing must be observed here (waiting time)!
- 9 Open the ball valve on the sample water inlet.

Zero point calibration with disinfectant-free water

| Measurement value calibration |
|-------------------------------|
| (DPD)                         |

- **10** After zero point calibration, wait at least 2 minutes.
- 11 Select the parameter "Cal. Span" and confirm with "Enter".
- **12** Open the input menu by pressing "Enter". The actual measured sensor value is thereby cached and can be used for later calibration. This is absolutely essential for fluctuating measurement values.
- 13 Immediately after this extract specimen of sample water.
- **14** Determine the free chlorine, ozone, chlorine dioxide or potassium permanganate content, for example, with a photometer.
- **15** Use the arrow keys to enter the determined value. Finally save by pressing "Enter". Should the measured sensor value ( $\mu$ A) according to step 12 have changed, the measured value displays another value immediately after calibration than that which was entered in the calibration menu. This is based on the change in the measured value during the calibration process between step 12 and 15.
- **16** Press the soft key "back" several times until the main display is shown. This concludes the calibration.



#### Please note

In the DPD calibration of the  $Cl_2$ ++ measurement the calibration value should be greater or equal to 25 % of the measuring range.

# 6.4.3 Membrane sensors calibration

|                              | Calibration is nearly identical for all membrane sensors. The<br>difference lies in the fact that some of the chemicals are measured<br>manually with a photometer and others with a colour meter.<br>A 1-point calibration is available to calibrate the total chlorine<br>measurement and the combined chlorine measurement.<br>Either the total chlorine or the combined chlorine must be<br>calibrated. |  |  |
|------------------------------|---|--|--|
|                              | For the selective ozone, chlorine dioxide and free chlorine<br>measurements, 1-point or 2-point can be selected in the<br>calibration menu of the "Calibration mode".<br>2-point calibration provides the option to compensate for possible<br>measuring cell zero point offsets.   |  |  |
| Total chlorine               | In the calibration of the total chlorine measurement, the free<br>chlorine value is also essential. For this reason, prior to calibration,<br>the current free chlorine value must be entered in the menu<br>calibration-CI-total "Enter free CI2". Only then shall the total<br>chlorine calibration be carried out as follows:  |  |  |
|                              | <ol> <li>Using the soft key "calib", select the menu item "CI-total" and<br/>press "Enter" to confirm.</li> </ol>   |  |  |
|                              | 2 Select the parameter "calib. total" and press "Enter" to confirm.   |  |  |
|                              | <b>3</b> Open the input menu by pressing "Enter". The actual measured sensor value is thereby cached and can be used for later calibration. This is essential for fluctuating measurement values.   |  |  |
|                              | 4 Immediately after this extract specimen of sample water and<br>determine the total chlorine content using a comparative<br>device.  |  |  |
|                              | 5 Use the arrow keys to enter the determined value.   |  |  |
|                              | 6 Save the value by pressing "ENTER".   |  |  |
| Combined chlorine (optional) | The calibration of the combined chlorine measurement also takes<br>into account the free chlorine value. It must therefore be ensured<br>that the free chlorine value (from external measurement system) is<br>correctly calibrated. Calibration can then take place as follows:  |  |  |
|                              | 1 Using the soft key "calib", select the menu item "CI-comb" and<br>press "Enter" to confirm.   |  |  |
|                              | 2 Select the parameters "calib. comb" or "calib total" and press<br>"Enter" to confirm. It does not matter which value is entered.  |  |  |
|                              | 3 Open the input menu by pressing "Enter". The actual<br>measured sensor value is thereby cached and can be used for<br>later calibration. This is essential with fluctuating<br>measurement values.  |  |  |

- 4 Immediately after this extract specimen of sample water and determine the combined or total chlorine content using a comparative device.
- **5** Confirm the selection by pressing "ENTER" and enter the value measured using with the arrow keys.
- **6** Confirm by pressing "ENTER". This concludes the combined chlorine calibration.

Zero point calibration using 2-point calibration

Zero point calibration for ozone, chloride dioxide, Cl<sub>2</sub> free (M)



#### Please note

Instead of the zero point, a DPD value can also be calibrated.

- **1** Starting from the basic display, select the "Calibration" menu.
- 2 Select the measurement to be calibrated from the menu, e.g. Cl<sub>2</sub> free (M) and confirm with "Enter".
- 3 Select the parameter "Zero span" and confirm with "Enter".
- **4** Run disinfectant-free or disinfectant-reduced water through the flow-through adapter (e.g. by switching off or reducing the dosing system).
- 5 Allow for the process delay by waiting until the measured value on the display no longer changes. In disinfectant-reduced water, extract a specimen of the sample water and run a comparative measurement.
- 6 Press the "Enter" key to open the setup menu.
- **7** To enter the calibration value, the zero point or an ascertained DPD value can be entered using the arrow keys (e.g. with reduced dosing).
- 8 Save the value by pressing the "Enter" key.
- 1 Extract specimen of sample water.
- **2** Determine the disinfectant content with a comparative device (e.g. photometer).
- **3** Starting from the basic display, from the main menu, select the "Calibration" menu.
- 4 Select the measurement to be calibrated from the menu and confirm with "Enter".
- 5 Select the parameter "Calib. span" and confirm with "Enter".
- 6 Confirm the selection with "Enter" and enter the ascertained value with the arrow keys.
- **7** Save the value by pressing the "Enter" key. This concludes the calibration for O<sub>3</sub>, ClO<sub>2</sub> or Cl<sub>2</sub> free.

DPD calibration using 1-point and 2-point calibration for  $O_3$ ,  $CIO_2$  and  $CI_2$ 

## 6.4.4 pH calibration



#### Please note

During pH calibration the buffer solution and the sample water should have the same temperature. If there is a difference in temperature of > 5 °C, first enter the temperature of the buffer solution in the menu "Calibration" - "pH" under "Cal. at temp.".

pH-7 alignment

1 Starting from the basic display in the main menu select the "Calibration" menu.

- 2 Select the menu item. The "pH" widow appears on the display.
- 3 Select the parameter "Cal. pH7" and confirm the selection.
- 4 Place one of the supplied beakers into the bottom clip and fill with the buffer solution pH 7.00, or clamp a bag with buffer solution pH 7.00 into the bottom fastening clip.
- 5 Pull or unscrew the pH sensor from the lid of the cell body.
- 6 Dip the pH sensor through the top clip at least 2 cm into the buffer solution and move slightly until the indicated pH value remains constant.
- **7** Confirm the selection with the "Enter" key and, using the four arrow keys, enter the pH value that corresponds to the buffer temperature, or leave pH 7.00.
- 8 Save the value by pressing the "Enter" key.
- 9 Leave the menu by pressing "Back".

Slope alignment 1

- **10** Remove the buffer solution pH 7.00 from the bottom fastening clip.
- **11** Wash the sensor in distilled water to prevent carry-over of the buffer solution.
- **12** Select the parameter "Cal. pH" and confirm the selection.
- **13** Place an empty beaker into the bottom clip and fill with the buffer solution pH 4.65, or clamp a bag with buffer solution pH 4.65 into the bottom fastening clip.



## Please note

If buffer solutions other than those stated are used, the pH value of the buffer solution must be lower than pH 6 or higher than pH 8.

|                | <b>14</b> Dip the pH sensor at least 2 cm deep into the buffer solution until the indicated pH value remains constant.   |  |  |
|----------------|--|--|--|
|                | <b>15</b> Confirm the selection with "Enter" and save the ascertained value with the arrow keys.   |  |  |
|                | 16 Save the value by pressing the "Enter" key.   |  |  |
|                | 17 Take the pH sensor out of the upper fastening clip and wash<br>with distilled water.  |  |  |
|                | <b>18</b> Insert or screw the pH sensor into the lid of the cell body.<br>The pH measurement is then calibrated.   |  |  |
| pH calibration | If external influences result in a constant difference between the displayed pH value and a pH value measured manually, this difference can be compensated:                                  |  |  |
|                | 1 Starting from the basic display in the main menu select the "Calibration" menu.  |  |  |
|                | 2 Select menu item "pH".   |  |  |
|                | <b>3</b> Select the parameter "Offset" and confirm the selection.  |  |  |
|                | 4 Confirm the selection with "Enter" and using the four arrow keys enter the difference between the comparative value and the displayed value (comparative value minus the displayed value). |  |  |
|                | <b>5</b> Save the value by pressing the "Enter" key. This concludes the pH offset.   |  |  |
|                |  |  |  |



## Please note

The offset is deleted each time a new pH-7 alignment or span alignment is performed.

# 6.4.5 Redox calibration (mV)

Please note

# 0

Redox sensors have long running-in times. After calibration with a buffer solution, it can therefore take several hours until the value has stabilized.

- 1 Starting from the basic display in the main menu select the "Calibration" menu.
- 2 Select menu item "ORP" and conform with the Enter key.
- **3** Confirm the menu "Calibrate mV" with the "Enter" key.
- **4** Place one of the supplied beakers into the bottom clip and fill with the buffer solution or clamp a bag with buffer solution into the bottom clip.
- 5 Pull or unscrew the Redox sensor from the lid of the cell body.
- **6** Dip the Redox sensor through the top clip at least 2 cm deep into the buffer solution until the indicated pH value remains constant.
- 7 Confirm the selection with "Enter" and enter the ascertained value with the arrow keys.
- 8 Save the value by pressing the "Enter" key.
- 9 Remove the Redox sensor from the top clip.
- **10** Insert or screw the Redox sensor into the lid of the cell body. Redox calibration is then concluded.

## 6.4.6 Conductivity calibration

# Please note

The conductivity sensor has an integrated temperature sensor and therefore an automatic temperature compensation feature.

In the conductivity calibration menu, the temperature of the temperature sensor in the conductivity sensor can be adapted with the parameter "Cal. temperature" to a comparative measurement.

- 1 Starting from the basic display in the main menu select the "Calibration" menu.
- 2 Select menu item "Conductivity" and confirm selection.
- **3** Select parameter "Calib. conductivity" and confirm with the "Enter" key.
- 4 Place one of the supplied beakers into the bottom clip and fill with approx. 25 ml calibration solution \* or clamp a bag with calibration solution\* into the bottom clip.
- **5** Pull or unscrew the conductivity sensor from the lid of the cell body.
- **6** Dip the conductivity sensor through the top clip into the calibration solution to the bottom of the beaker.
- 7 Pull out the conductivity sensor and rinse off with distilled water.
- 8 Repeat the dipping and rinsing procedure several times.
- **9** Replace the calibration solution in the bottom beaker with a new solution.
- **10** Repeat measurement. Move the conductivity sensor slightly until the displayed value remains constant.
- **11** Confirm the selection with "Enter" and enter the ascertained value with the arrow keys.
- 12 Save the value by pressing the "Enter" key.
- **13** Insert or screw the conductivity sensor into the lid of the cell body.

Conductivity calibration is then concluded.

Depending on the measuring range:
 600 μS/cm calibration solution for a measuring range of
 2500 μS/cm
 60 mS/cm calibration solution for all mS/cm measuring ranges

## 6.4.7 Fluoride calibration

The fluoride measurement is calibrated at 2 points, which should be as far from each other as possible, but within the measurement range. The lower value must be calibrated with a lower fluoride concentration than the upper value, e.g. lower value 0.20 mg/l and upper value 2.00 mg/l.

Calibration solutions for 0.20 mg/l, 2.00 mg/l and 100 mg/l are available.



#### Please note

Before use, the electrode must be placed in a 100 mg/l fluoride solution at pH 7 for approx. 24 hours. This is necessary to guarantee that the electrode functions properly.

- 1 Starting from the basic display, from the main menu, select the "Calibration" menu.
- 2 Select menu item "Fluoride" and confirm with "Enter".
- 3 10 Fill 20 ml of the lower concentrated standard solution in one of the supplied beakers and place in the bottom clip. Dip the electrode at least 2 cm.
- 4 Select "Cal. lower value" in the menu, and press "Enter".
- 5 Confirm the selection with "Enter" and enter the value of the calibration solution using the arrow keys. Wait until the displayed measured value no longer changes.
- 6 Save the value by pressing the "Enter" key.
- 7 Press "Back" and select the menu "Cal. upper value". Confirm by pressing "Enter".
- 8 Wash electrode with distilled water and fill 10 20 ml of the higher concentrated standard solution into one of the supplied beakers. Dip electrode.
- **9** Confirm the selection with "Enter" and enter the value of the calibration solution using with the arrow keys and wait until the displayed measured value no longer changes.
- 10 Save the value by pressing the "Enter" key.
- 11 Place the sensor in the flow-through adapter again.

This concludes the fluoride calibration.

| Fluoride correction | If external influences result in a constant difference between the displayed value and a fluoride value measured manually, this difference can be compensated: |   |
|---------------------|--|---|
|                     | 1  | Starting from the basic display, from the main menu, select the "Calibration" menu. |
|                     | 2  | Select menu item "Fluor".   |
|                     | 3  | Select the parameter "Offset" and confirm the selection.                            |

- **4** Confirm the selection with "Enter" and using the four arrow keys enter the difference between the comparative value and the displayed value (comparative value minus the displayed value).
- **5** Save the value by pressing the "Enter" key.

This concludes the fluoride correction.



#### Please note

The offset correction is deleted at every new fluoride calibration or slope alignment.

# 6.5 Errors and remedies

*Error messages* The following table shows and explains all possible error messages which can be displayed. If several errors occur at the same time, the corresponding messages appear alternately in succession. When the error has been remedied, the error message is automatically deleted.

If you are unable to remedy the error yourself, please contact your contractual partner.

| Error message                     | Cause  | Remedy  |
|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| Measured value<br>display flashes | Measured value is outside the measuring range  | Check measuring range and change, if<br>necessary. Check dosing or controller<br>settings |
| Positionerfeedback<br>flashes     | Positioner in manual mode  | Press the adjusting knob on the positioner  |
| DI I flashes                      | Sample water flow recently<br>insufficient (delay running), signal at<br>the signal input DI I | Check the sample water flow rate (approx. 33 l/h)   |
| DI I Permanent<br>display         | Sample water flow insufficient for some time (delay elapsed)                                   | Clean or replace the preliminary filter   |
|                                   |  | Multi-sensor incorrectly connected<br>or defective  |
| DI II                             | Signal at the signal input DI II   | Check connection and setting  |
| Zero ?                            | In 3-electrode cells<br>Sensor has zero current > +5 μA or<br>< -5 μA                          | Upot potential voltage set incorrectly; change, if necessary                              |
|                                   | -ο μπ  | Electrodes in the 3-electrode cell are soiled; clean and service, if necessary            |
|                                   |  | Sample water is not turned off or check valve leaks; turn off sample water, if necessary  |
|                                   | In membrane sensors<br>Sensor has zero current > +5 μA or<br>< -5 μA                           | Disinfectant in water; calibrate with disinfectant-free water, if necessary               |
|                                   |  | Check sensors and replace or service, if necessary  |

| Error message | Cause   | Remedy   |
|---------------|---|--|
| Calibration?  | In 3-electrode cells and membrane<br>sensors<br>Slope error - the sensor current<br>based on 1 mg/l has fallen below the<br>required minimum<br>In measuring range:<br>10μ : min. 0.04 μA/mg/l<br>70 μA: min. 0.2 μA/mg/l<br>100 μA: min. 0.4 μA/mg/l<br>200 μA: min. 2 μA/mg/l           | Check whether there are air bubbles on<br>the membrane sensor and remove, if<br>necessary<br>Service membrane sensors - replace<br>electrolyte/membrane cap<br>Clean 3-electrode cells, replace cell<br>sand         |
|               | With pH<br>with pH 7 calibration, the<br>sensor signal is outside<br>-100 – +100 mV or the sensor<br>delivers a signal outside 46 – 70 mV<br>per pH step<br>the distance of the calibration point<br>is less than 1 pH step   | Checks electrode,<br>Check buffer solution,<br>Replace if necessary  |
|               | With mV<br>the correction offset of the mV<br>electrode is outside -50 – +50 mV   | Check electrodes,<br>Check buffer solution,<br>Replace if necessary  |
|               | Conductivity<br>measurement spread is smaller<br>than 0.8 or larger than 1.2  | Clean sensor,<br>check,<br>change sensor if necessary  |
|               | Fluoride<br>The rate of change of the sensor<br>curve is too small or the calibration<br>limits have been exceeded<br>0,2 mg/l: 40 – 160 mV<br>2.0 mg/l: -10 – 100 mV<br>20 mg/l: -60 – 40 mV<br>The lower cal. value sensor voltage<br>must be 20 mV higher than the<br>upper cal. value | Check electrode, cable and standard<br>solution, use fresh standard solution,<br>replace electrodes  |
| mA output?    | Load error<br>The mA output cannot drive its mA<br>output current through the<br>connected current loop (500 Ohm at<br>20 mA max.).   | Check whether the mA signal is<br>required at all (e.g. for plotter). If not, in<br>the "INPUTS/OUTPUTS" menu,<br>"analog output", switch off the output<br>signal.<br>Check the mA signal cable for<br>interruption |
| Temperature ? | Interruption in the<br>temperaturesensor or multi-sensor<br>cable   | Check multi-sensor and cable   |

| Error message         | Cause   | Remedy  |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| Setpoint?             | Due to modification of the<br>measuring range the setpoint of the<br>controller<br>is outside the measuring range.  | Reset the controller setpoint or adjust the measuring range   |
| Sensor temp?          | Error in the temperature<br>measurement of the sensor<br>measurement module/SiDiSens<br>Interruption in the temperature<br>sensor or cable  | Check the temperature sensor and cable of the measurement module  |
| Cl <sub>2</sub> comb? | Free Cl <sub>2</sub> measurement via CAN bus<br>is not available  | Check SiDiSens DES, check setup of CAN bus  |
| Cl <sub>2</sub> ++?   | pH<6 or pH>8,75<br>pH measurement via CAN bus is not<br>available   | Check pH measurement, check<br>SiDiSens DES, check setup of CAN<br>bus  |
| Cell ?                | In 3-electrode cells<br>Chlorine sensor not screwed in.<br>No grit cleaning.<br>Sensor, sensor cable or sensor<br>module defective.<br>Sensor measuring module µA<br>measuring range exceeded | Screw in sensor correctly.<br>Check grit cleaning.<br>Check sensor, sensor cable or sensor<br>module, replace if necessary.<br>Select higher µA measuring range |
|                       | With pH, F <sup>-</sup> and mV modules<br>Sensor, sensor cable or sensor<br>module defective  | Check the sensor, sensor cable and sensor module, replace if necessary  |
|                       | In membrane sensors<br>Sensor, sensor cable or sensor<br>module defective<br>Sensor measuring module µA<br>measuring range exceeded   | Check the sensor, sensor cable and sensor module, replace if necessary  |
|                       | In conductivity modules<br>Sensor, sensor cable or sensor<br>module defective   | Check the sensor, sensor cable or<br>sensor module, replace if necessary;<br>clean sensor   |

| Error message                | Cause   | Remedy  |
|------------------------------|---|---|
| Position. Ym?                | Ym range too narrow                                       | Check the distance between the calibration points.  |
|                              | Position of positioning motor is<br>calibrated wrong      |   |
|                              | Positioner selected, but not connected                    | Check setting: Positioner with Ym   |
|                              | Feedback signal incorrect                                 | Check DIP switch for feedback   |
|                              | Positioner feedback incorrectly<br>connected or defective | Check (refer to 9. "Wiring Diagrams")   |
| Module?                      | Sensor module has been removed<br>Sensor module defective | Refit or replace the sensor module  |
| Adaption?                    | Adaption terminated with error                            | Refer to 4.9 "Adaption".  |
| Range?                       | Min. or max. limit value is outside the measuring range   | Check the min/max limit values and change, if necessary                                   |
| mA-Input 1 ?<br>mA-Input 2 ? | mA-Input signal has been exceeded or fallen short of      | Check mA connection or signal   |
| Ym calibration?              | Positioner calibration incorrect                          | Check calibration of the positioner   |
| CAN<br>measurement?          | No CAN bus station present                                | Check CAN bus, configure CAN station  |
| CAN-actuator?                | No CAN bus actuator present                               | Check CAN bus, configure CAN station  |
| Ym display blinking          | Positioner disconnected                                   | Switch positioner to automatic  |
| Sample Line Dos              | Automatic sample water inlet disinfection                 | Time-controlled function is ended<br>automatically, as soon as the process is<br>complete |

| Error | The following table shows and explains possible errors which can occur. If you are unable to remedy the error yourself, please |
|-------|--|
|       | contact your contractual partner.  |

| Error   | Cause  | Remedy   |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| No indication on  | No power supply                                  | External switch or fuse on   |  |
| device  | Device fuse defective                            | Check the power supply and replace<br>fuse<br>(Electrician)  |  |
|   | Housing cover is fitted incorrectly              | Check and, if necessary, fit the housing cover correctly (cable possibly trapped)                            |  |
| Displayed/output<br>value incorrect   | Change on sensor or in the sample water          | Calibrating  |  |
| Low controller quality<br>(controller swings,<br>setpoint not reached)                                      | Incorrect control parameters                     | Check, adjust controller parameters;<br>perform automatic adaption on single<br>feedback closed-loop control |  |
|   | Dosing chemical tank empty                       | Fill, replace  |  |
|   | Incorrect actuator selected                      | Check, correct actuator  |  |
|   | Positioner or pump defective                     | Check, replace positioner/pump   |  |
| Measured value<br>display not available,<br>although the<br>appropriate<br>measuring module is<br>installed | Measuring module defective or fitted incorrectly | Check, replace measuring module<br>(Electrician)   |  |
| Positioner/pump does  | Positioner in manual mode                        | Engage manual knob   |  |
| not work  | Dosing device selected incorrectly               | Select correct dosing device   |  |
|   | Positioner/pump incorrectly connected            | Connect the positioner/pump correctly (Electrician)  |  |
|   | Relay defective                                  | Check, (Electrician)   |  |
|   | Incorrect application                            | Check (refer to 4.9 "Adaption" or 9.<br>"Wiring Diagrams")   |  |
| Positioner runs in wrong direction  | Positioner incorrectly connected                 | Correct connections<br>(Electrician)   |  |
| Positioner closes   | Positioner feedback interrupted                  | Correct connections<br>(Electrician)   |  |
| Digital outputs without function  | Digital inputs not activated                     | Activate digital inputs  |  |

6.

# 7. Maintenance

# 7.1 Maintenance Schedules



### Please note

The liability for defects is only valid if maintenance work is performed as specified. Adhere to the appropriate standards, regulations and locally applicable guidelines.

| Activity  | Period/Interval                                      | Page     |  |
|---|--|----------|--|
| Flow block assembly DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5/DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup><br>Pool/VariaSens |  |          |  |
| Check for leakages  | Daily  | Page 221 |  |
| Comparative measurement, calibrate if necessary                                   | daily/acc. to guidelines                             | Page 201 |  |
| Check electrolyte level (DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 only)                             | Weekly   | Page 223 |  |
| Check cell sand (DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 and DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool only)       | Weekly   | Page 221 |  |
| Clean fine filter if membrane cells are used                                      | every 2 months<br>(depending on amount of<br>dirt)   | Page 226 |  |
| Change cell sand (DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 and DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool only)      | Every six months                                     | Page 222 |  |
| Change electrolyte (DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 only)                                  | Every six months                                     | Page 224 |  |
| Diaphragm (DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 only)   | every six months<br>(depending on amount of<br>dirt) | Page 224 |  |
|   |  |          |  |
| Membrane sensors OZ7, CD7   |  |          |  |
| Comparative measurement, calibrate if necessary                                   | Daily  | Page 227 |  |
| Replace electrolyte   | Every six months                                     | Page 224 |  |
| Replace membrane cap  | Annual   | Page 227 |  |

| Activity  | Period/Interval                             | Page                                       |
|---|---|--|
| Membrane sensor FC2, TC3  |   |  |
| Check measuring signal  | min. 1x per week                            | refer to separate<br>instruction<br>manual |
| Replace electrolyte   | every 3 months                              | refer to separate<br>instruction<br>manual |
| Replace membrane cap  | 1x per year (depending<br>on water quality) | refer to separate<br>instruction<br>manual |
| pH measurement  |   |  |
| Comparative pH measurement, calibrate if necessary              | weekly/<br>acc. to guidelines               | Page 228                                   |
| mV measurement  |   |  |
| Check redox of buffer solution                                  | every 4 to 6 weeks                          | Page 227                                   |
| Conductivity  |   |  |
| Check conductivity  | every 4 to 6 weeks                          | Page 229                                   |
| Fluoride Measurement  |   |  |
| Comparative measurement F <sup>-</sup> , calibrate if necessary | daily/acc. to guidelines                    |  |
| SFC Electronics   | Change buffer battery<br>after 5 years      | Page 231                                   |

| Checking for tightness (daily)  | Check the entire measuring device including all screw connections for leakage. Repair any leakage points immediately!   |
|---------------------------------|---|
|                                 | Please note   |
|                                 | Air bubbles in the sample water influence the measuring accuracy.<br>The cause must be determined and remedied.   |
| Checking the cell sand (weekly) | Check that there is sufficient sand in the cell body.<br>The cell sand must be swirled around in the bottom section of the<br>cell body.<br>The cell sand is necessary for cleaning the chlorine sensor<br>electrodes and must be replenished or replaced when required.<br>(Refer to 5.3.2 "Pour in the cell sand (only with DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 and<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool)" and "Changing sell sand with the 3-electrode<br>cell DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5, DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> Pool"). |
|                                 | <i>Please note</i><br>When fresh sand is replenished, the electrode current may<br>increase slightly for approximately 3 hours. Do not calibrate during<br>this time.   |

You must calibrate each time the cell sand is replaced.

The calibration must be checked after one day.

# 7.2 Maintenance of flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5

Changing sell sand with the 3-electrode cell DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5, DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool The cell sand required for constant cleaning of the electrodes grinds itself down over time until it is very fine. It must therefore be replaced regularly. Cell sand is delivered in a plastic bottle:

- 1 Remove cover of flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5.
- 2 Close the ball valve on the sample water inlet and on the outlet (pressurized version).
- **3** Open the drain valve and drain the cell body (hold container underneath).
- 4 Close the drain valve when the cell body is empty.
- 5 Remove the sensors. Remove sensor cable from the sensors.
- 6 Loosen the lower cap on the 3-electrode cell (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 only).
- 7 Remove the signal cable (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 only).
- 8 Unscrew the upper knurled nut on the electrolyte container (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 only).
- **9** Using the electrode mount, push the electrolyte tank downwards out of the cell body (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 only) or remove the flow distributor cap (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool).
- **10** Wash the cell sand out of the electrode mount or flow distributor cap.
- **11** Using the electrolyte container, insert the electrode mount back into the cell body or screw the flow distributor cap back on.



### Please note

The cell body's dowel pin must be locked into place in the appropriate hole in the electrode mount (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 only).

- **12** Screw the upper knurled nut back on the electrolyte container (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 only).
- **13** Reconnect the signal cable acc. to color (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 only).

| CNT | Counter electrode               | Blue point | Blue cable  |
|-----|---------------------------------|------------|-------------|
| WRK | Working electrode               | Red point  | Pink cable  |
| Ref | Reference electrode<br>(middle) |            | White cable |

SFC

- **14** Screw the cap back on (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 only).
- 15 Fill half a cap from the plastic bottle with cell sand and pour it into the cell body (approx. 1/2 cm<sup>3</sup> cell sand) (see 5.3.2 "Pour in the cell sand (only with DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 and DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool)").
- 16 Reinsert electrodes.
- **17** Reopen the check valve on the sample water inlet and outlet (pressurized version).
- **18** Perform the zero-point calibration after approximately three hours running-in time.



### Please note

You must calibrate each time the cell sand is replaced.

The calibration must be checked after one day.

### Please note

We recommend checking and, if necessary, replacing the electrodes and diaphragms when replacing the cell sand (see "Replacing electrolyte, reference electrode and diaphragms (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5)").

Check electrolyte level of the 3electrode cell  $\text{DEPOLOX}^{\text{®}}$  5

- Check whether the potassium electrolyte is filled approx. 3 cm over the water level (narrowing of the KCL container) and replenish, if necessary. To do this, remove the plug in the upper part of the electrolyte tank and inject the electrolyte (use the syringe in the accessory set).
- 2 The diaphragms in the electrolyte tank form the connection between the reference electrolytes and the sample water. If the sample water quality is poor (e.g. high iron content), both diaphragms in the electrolyte housing should be replaced. The diaphragms should be white (any coloration is an indication that the diaphragms are clogged and should be replaced).
- **3** Calibrate after approximately three hours.

### Please note

The calibration must be checked after one day.

Replacing electrolyte (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5)



1 Remove cover of flow block assembly DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5.

- 2 Close the ball valve on the sample water inlet and on the outlet (pressurized version).
- **3** Open the drain valve and drain the cell body (hold container underneath).
- 4 Close the drain valve when the cell body is empty.
- **5** Remove the sensors. Loosen the cable union (hold the cable while doing this as it may not be allowed to rotate).
- 6 Loosen the lower cap on the 3 electrode cell.
- 7 Remove the signal cable.
- 8 Unscrew the upper knurled nut on the electrolyte container.
- **9** Remove the electrolyte tank out of the cell body from below using the electrode mount.

### Please note

Wash the cell sand out of the electrode mount "Changing sell sand with the 3-electrode cell DEPOLOX® 5, DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool".

- **10** Remove the electrolyte container from the electrode mount. To do this, unscrew the knurled nut in the electrode mount.
- **11** Pull the electrolyte container upwards out of the electrode mount.
- 12 Remove the drain plug from the electrolyte container.
- **13** Turn the electrolyte container upside down and drainthe KCI electrolytes by lightly shaking it.
- **14** If necessary, replace the reference electrode. The reference electrode can be unscrewed from the electrolyte container. Lightly wet the O-ring before installinga new reference electrode.

### Please note

The diaphragms, which form the contact between the reference electrodes and sample water, cannot be cleaned. If the water quality is very good, the diaphragms can remain installed for up to three years; they should be replaced thereafter (no exceptions). If the sample water quality is poor, the diaphragms may be soiled. This influences the measuring accuracy.

**15** Remove both diaphragms from the electrolyte container using a suitable tool (e.g. tweezers).

Replacing reference electrode (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5)

> Replacing diaphragms (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5)



SFC

- **16** Push new diaphragms into the electrolyte container. Lightly wet the O-rings.
- **17** Insert the electrolyte container back into the electrode mount. Lightly wet the O-ring here as well.

**18** Fill the container with fresh electrolyte (approx. 3 cm above the water level or narrowing of the KCI container).

- 19 Insert the drain plug into the electrolyte container.
- **20** Insert the electrode mount back into the cell body using the electrolyte container.

### Please note

Filling electrolyte

(DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5)

The cell body's dowel pin must be locked into place in the appropriate hole in the electrode mount.

**21** Screw the upper knurled nut back onto the electrolyte container.

22 Reconnect the signal cable acc. to color.

| CNT | Counter electrode               | Blue point | Blue cable  |
|-----|---------------------------------|------------|-------------|
| WRK | Working electrode               | Red point  | Pink cable  |
| Ref | Reference electrode<br>(middle) |            | White cable |

- 23 Screw the cap back on.
- 24 Fill half a cap from the plastic bottle with cell sand and pour it into the cell body (approx. 1/2 cm<sup>3</sup> cell sand) (see 5.3.2 "Pour in the cell sand (only with DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 and DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool)").
- 25 Reinsert electrodes.
- **26** Reopen the check valve on the sample water inlet and outlet (pressurized version).
- **27** Perform the zero-point calibration after approximately three hours running-in time.

#### Please note

Perform a zero-point calibration after one hour running-in timeand, if required, after 24 hours. You must calibrate each time the cell sand is replaced. The calibration must be checked after one day.



Please note

Note the electrolyte's expiration date.

Cleaning/replacing the fine filter (DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5, DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool, VariaSens)



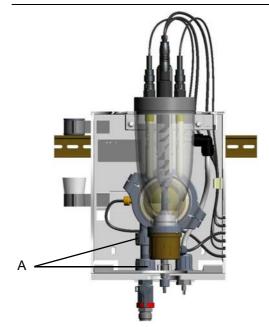
### Please note

A fine filter must only be installed when membrane sensors are employed.



### Please note

The fine filter must be cleaned or replaced in order to protect the membrane sensor's delicate membrane against soiling or damage.



Picture 1 Flow block assembly cutaway model

- A Fine filter
- 1 Release both knurled nuts.
- 2 Remove complete filter unit.
- 3 Remove the fine filter.

To do this, screw the M6 screw slightly into the fine filter and pull the fine filter out of the filter unit or

press the fine filter with a suitable tool (not pointed) out of the filter unit.

- 4 Rinse the fine filter with water, replace if necessary.
- **5** Place the fine filter into the filter unit. Ensure that the O-ring is fitted correctly (insert as far as possible).
- 6 Fit the filter unit. Ensure that it is fitted in the correct position.
- 7 Tighten both knurled nuts (A).

### 7.3 Maintaining membrane sensors

For the membrane sensor maintenance procedure, see 4.2.6 "Membrane sensors".

Please refer to instruction manual "membrane sensor for free chlorine FC2" and "membrane sensor for total chlorine TC3".

# 7.4 Maintaining Redox electrode

Depending on how dirty the sample water is, the Redox electrode must be cleaned at certain intervals. Unclean water causes the measurement to be very slow. At the same time, the Redox voltage is frequently indicated as too low. The surface of the platinum disc is usually soiled. This may be to some extent in the form of an invisible coating. In particular, the ceramic electrode diaphragm may also be soiled or coated with lime deposits.

To clean the soiled metal disc, the Redox electrode is removed from the flow-through adapter and cleaned with a paper towel; use diluted hydrochloric acid (up to 10 %), if necessary. Scouring cleaner may not be used because it may clog the diaphragm. Then rinse well with water. Do not touch the platinum electrode after rinsing in order to keep oil from fingers off them. To remove lime deposits, immerse the electrodes just past the diaphragms into hydrochloric acid (10 %); allow several minutes for this to react and rinse with clear water.



### Please note

Do not use any other chemicals than those described here. These could damage the electrode.

# 7.5 Maintaining pH electrode

Clean and calibrate if there are fluctuations in the measured values. A routine schedule cannot be given here because the cleaning schedule depends heavily on the general condition of the sample water. In general, calibrate approx. every 4 weeks. Remove dirt on the glass membrane and diaphragm to prevent measuring errors.

In particular, the ceramic electrode diaphragm may also be soiled or coated with lime deposits.

Remove contaminants deposited on the surface of the membrane glass; use diluted hydrochloric acid (up to 10 %), if necessary.

The electrodes should not be cleaned in a dry state because this is more likely to smear the layer of dirt over the surface rather than removing it. Under no circumstances may the membrane be treated with abrasive cleaning agents.

The electrode must be rinsed subsequently with nothing other than water.

Remove lime deposits on the glass membrane and the diaphragm by immersing the electrode into hydrochloric acid (up to 10 %). Rinse thoroughly with water or distilled water here as well; pH electrodes age. This is often the cause for a slow display of the pH value or a drop in the span. pH electrodes typically last 1 to 2 years. However, routine maintenance of the electrodes recommended.

# 7.6 Maintaining fluoride electrode

Routinely check the electrolyte level in the electrode (at least once per week). The fill level should always be just under the filling hole, approx. 25 mm above the sample water. Replenish the electrolyte, if necessary.

Routinely calibrate the measuring system to guarantee safe operation and accuracy.

The electrode shaft can be cleaned using a moist cloth.

Do not touch the glass surfaces with the cloth.

# 7.7 Maintaining conductivity electrode

The electrode does not contain any maintenance parts. However, depending on how dirty the sample water is, the electrode can be cleaned at certain intervals. A routine schedule cannot be given here because the cleaning schedule depends heavily on the general condition of the sample water. In general, calibrate approx. every 4 weeks.

If wiping with a soft, damp paper towel is not sufficient, use one of the following chemical cleaning methods depending on how the electrode is soiled:

| Soiling                           | Cleaning agent                                | Time needed at<br>room<br>temperature |
|-----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| Water soluble substances          | Distilled water                               | Any                                   |
| Grease and oil                    | Warm water and<br>household washing<br>liquid | Any                                   |
| Lime and<br>hydroxide<br>deposits | Hydrochloric acid<br>(0.1 n)                  | Any                                   |

229

# 7.8 Changing the fuse on the A&C board

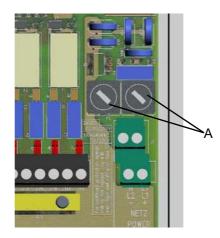


### Warning!

Only authorized and qualified electricians are permitted to open the housing.

The device is not equipped with a mains switch.

- 1 Disconnect the unit from the power supply.
- 2 Remove the cover of the electronic module.
- **3** Remove screw-in fuse holder.
- 4 Change the defective fuse.
- 5 Screw the screw-in fuse holder back in.
- 6 Reassemble the unit.



Picture 2 Cutaway model of fuses

A Screw-in fuse holder

# 7.9 Replacing the battery



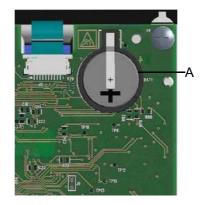
### Warning!

Only authorized and qualified electricians are permitted to open the housing.

The device is not equipped with a mains switch.

The buffer battery is required for the real time clock in case of a power failure. If the time is not correct or if time controlled functions show faulty behavior, the battery must be changed. After five years at the latest.

1 Disconnect the unit from the power supply.



Picture 3 Housing cover with battery

- A Backup battery
- 2 Remove the cover of the electronic module.
- **3** Take out the old buffer battery and dispose of in accordance with the regulations.
- 4 Insert the new battery type CR2032.
- **5** Replace the housing cover.
- 6 Switch on mains voltage.
- 7 Setting the date and time.

# 8. Complete Units, Retrofit Kits and Spare Parts



### Warning!

For reasons of safety, only use original spare parts. Please contact our customer service department if you need any spare parts.

| Part No.  |   | Complete unit  |
|-----------|---|--|
| W3T158815 | SFC Electronic module for wall installation                                     | 100 – 240 V, 4x relays, 1x mA output, 1x feedback input,<br>2x mA input, 2x DI, temperature input, SD memory card<br>128MB - 2 GB, RS485, CAN, 1x module slot for sensor<br>measuring module                               |
| W3T158816 |   | 24 V DC, 4x relays, 1x mA output, 1xfeedback input,<br>2x mA input, 2x DI, temperature input, SD memory card<br>128MB - 2 GB, RS485, CAN, 1x module slot for sensor<br>measuring module                                    |
| W3T158817 | SFC PC electronic module for<br>wall installation with mA/V<br>measuring module | 100 – 240 V, 4x relays, 1x mA output, 1x feedback input,<br>2x mA input, 2x DI, temperature input, SD memory card<br>128MB - 2 GB, RS485, CAN, 1x sensor measuring<br>module for mA/V signal installed for process control |
| W3T158818 |   | 24 V DC, 4x relays, 1x mA output, 1x feedback input,<br>2x mA input, 2x DI, temperature input, SD memory card<br>128MB - 2 GB, RS485, CAN, 1x sensor measuring<br>module for mA/V signal installed for process control     |
| W3T158819 | SFC SC electronic module for wall installation                                  | 100 – 240 V, 2x relay, 1x mA input, 1x feedback input,<br>2x DI, 1x mA output  |
| W3T158820 |   | 24 V DC, 2x relay, 1x mA input, 1xfeedback input, 2x DI,<br>1x mA output   |
| W3T162663 | SFC electronic module for<br>control cabinet installation                       | 100 – 240 V, 4x relays, 1x mA output, 1x feedback input,<br>2x mA input, 2x DI, temperature input, SD memory card<br>128MB - 2 GB, RS485, CAN, 1x module slot for sensor<br>measuring module                               |
| W3T162664 |   | 24 V DC, 4x relays, 1x mA output, 1xfeedback input,<br>2x mA input, 2x DI, temperature input, SD memory card<br>128MB - 2 GB, RS485, CAN, 1x module slot for sensor<br>measuring module                                    |

| Part No.  | Complete unit   |  |  |
|-----------|---|--|--|
| W3T162665 | SFC PC electronic module for<br>control cabinet installation<br>with mA/V measuring module  | 100 – 240 V, 4x relays, 1x mA output, 1x feedback input,<br>2x mA input, 2x DI, temperature input, SD memory card<br>128MB - 2 GB, RS485, CAN, 1x slot for process control |  |
| W3T162666 |   | 24 V DC, 4x relays, 1x mA output, 1xfeedback input,<br>2x mA input, 2x DI, temperature input, SD memory card<br>128MB - 2 GB, RS485, CAN, 1x sensor measuring<br>module    |  |
| W3T162667 | SFC SC electronic module for<br>control cabinet installation100 – 240 V, 2x relay, 1x mA input, 1x feedback input,<br>2x DI, 1x mA output |  |  |
| W3T162668 |   | 24 V DC, 2x relay, 1x mA output, 1xfeedback input,<br>2x DI, 1x mA output  |  |
| W3T168777 | Operating Manual SFC  |  |  |
| W3T163001 | Operating instructions RS485 bus interface of the SFC   |  |  |

### Sensor measuring modules

| рН  | Redox   | Conductivity potable water  | Conductivity<br>pool water   | Fluoride   |
|---|---|---|--|--|
| incl. calibration<br>solution, sensor,<br>cable, plug-in card<br>W3T166292<br>with optional<br>Process Control<br>W3T170350 | incl. calibration<br>solution, sensor,<br>cable, plug-in card<br>W3T166165<br>with optional<br>Process Control<br>W3T170351 | incl. 600 µS<br>calibration<br>solution, sensor,<br>cable, plug-in card<br>W3T158763<br>with optional<br>Process Control<br>W3T170354 | incl. 60 mS<br>calibration<br>solution, sensor,<br>cable, plug-in card<br>W3T166166<br>with optional<br>Process Control<br>W3T170353 | incl. sensor, cable,<br>plug-in card and<br>calibration solution<br>W3T166293<br>with optional<br>Process Control<br>W3T170352 |

# Sensor measuring module for membrane sensors

| Free chlorine FC2          | Chlorine dioxide<br>selective CD7 | Ozone selective OZ7        | Total chlorine TC3         |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| incl. sensor, cable, plug- | incl. sensor, cable, plug-        | incl. sensor, cable, plug- | incl. sensor, cable, plug- |
| in card, electrolyte       | in card, electrolyte              | in card, electrolyte       | in card, electrolyte       |
| W3T170343                  | W3T170345                         | W3T170347                  | W3T170339                  |
| with optional Process      | with optional Process             | with optional Process      | with optional Process      |
| Control W3T170344          | Control W3T170346                 | Control W3T170348          | Control W3T170340          |

# Seal set for membrane electrodes

Seal kit W3T158755 for pressure-tight installation of the membrane sensors

Sensor measuring module for 3-electrode cell DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool

Plug-in card with terminals, glass electrode, cleaning grit, power cable W3T170333

### Sensor measuring modules for DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 three-electrode cell

| Cl <sub>2</sub> -DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5<br>non-pressurized                                | Plug-in card with terminals, cleaning grit, connection cable DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 non-pressurized W3T162670   |
|---|---|
| CI <sub>2</sub> -DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5<br>non-pressurized with<br>option process control | Plug-in card with terminals, cleaning grit, connection cable DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 non-pressurized W3T162671   |
| Cl <sub>2</sub> -DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5<br>pressurized                                    | Plug-in card with terminals, cleaning grit,<br>connection cable DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5<br>pressurized W3T162672 |
| Cl <sub>2</sub> -DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5<br>pressurized with<br>option process control     | Plug-in card with terminals, cleaning grit,<br>connection cable DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5<br>pressurized W3T162673 |

### Retrofit sets

| 3-electrode cell<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 | 3-electrode cell<br>DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 4<br>with PT100 | 3-electrode cell<br>Micro 2000 with<br>PT1000 | 3-electrode cell<br>DEOX 2000 with<br>PT1000 | mA/V input card   |
|--|--|---|--|-------------------|
| Plug-in card with                          | Plug-in card with  | Plug-in card with                             | Plug-in card with                            | Plug-in card with |
| terminals                                  | terminals  | terminals                                     | terminals                                    | terminals         |
| W3T170334                                  | W3T170337  | W3T158828                                     | W3T158829                                    | W3T166161         |
| with optional                              | with optional  | with optional                                 | with optional                                | with optional     |
| Process Control                            | Process Control  | Process Control                               | Process Control                              | Process Control   |
| W3T170335                                  | W3T170338  | W3T158830                                     | W3T158831                                    | W3T170349         |

### Retrofit set fieldbus module

Three SFC fieldbus module retrofit kits (types of fieldbus) are available:

| Part No.  | Fieldbus type | Designation  |
|-----------|---------------|--|
| W3T166498 | Profibus DP   | Fieldbus module retrofit set<br>SFC Profibus DP with terminal<br>connections |
| W3T166499 | Profinet      | Fieldbus module retrofit set<br>SFC Profinet with terminal<br>connections    |
| W3T166500 | Modbus TCP    | Fieldbus module retrofit set<br>SFC Modbus TCP with terminal<br>connections  |

### SiDiSens retrofit kit / Accessories

| Part No.  | SiDiSens                                     | Description  |
|-----------|--|--|
| W3T212541 | SiDiSens pH                                  | Retrofit kit with SiDiSens pH incl.<br>pH electrode, calibration solution<br>and terminal resistor |
| W3T180808 | Top-hat rail<br>mounting set<br>for SiDiSens | Mounting bracket to fix the SiDiSens   |

## CAN bus component

| Part No.  | Description   |  |  |
|-----------|---|--|--|
| W2T504979 | CAN bus extension cable 0.3 m   |  |  |
| W2T504980 | (assembled) 1 m   |  |  |
| W2T504981 | 2 m   |  |  |
| W2T504982 | 5 m   |  |  |
| W2T504850 | 10 m  |  |  |
| W3T183695 | CAN T-piece   |  |  |
| W3T183696 | CAN terminal resistance M12 plug  |  |  |
| W3T212650 | CAN bus installation cable $2 \times 2 \times 0.22m^2$ by the metre   |  |  |
| W3T212807 | Cable connector M12 5-pin (ready to assemble)   |  |  |
| W3T212808 | Cable box M12 5-pin (ready to assemble)   |  |  |
| W3T204814 | Retrofit kit SFC CAN with CAN bus socket (M12)<br>and connector cable to connect to the CAN sensor<br>measurement module SiDiSens |  |  |

# Spare parts and consumables

| DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup><br>5  | рН   | Redox  | Conductivity   | Fluoride   | DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 4                                     | DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup><br>Pool                               |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Electrode<br>cleaning grit<br>W3T158743  | Sensor<br>W3T169297  | Sensor<br>W3T169298  | Sensor<br>W3T172052  | Sensor<br>W3T169303  | Plug-in card<br>without<br>Process<br>Control<br>W3T158832 | Glass<br>electrode<br>W3T172052                            |
| Electrolyte<br>W3T165565   | Calibration<br>solution<br>pH 7.00<br>250 ml<br>W3T165076  | Calibration<br>solution 478<br>mV 250 ml<br>W3T165048  | Cable<br>W3T172050   | Calibration<br>solution 0.20<br>mg/l<br>W3T161789<br>500 ml  | Plug-in card<br>with Process<br>Control<br>W3T158833       | Sensor<br>cable<br>W3T172012                               |
| Multi<br>sensor<br>W3T172029   | Calibration<br>solution<br>pH 4.65<br>250 ml<br>W3T165084  | Calibration<br>solution<br>478 mV 12 ml<br>Bag<br>W3T161182  | Calibration<br>solution<br>60 mS/cm<br>1000 ml<br>W3T161187  | Calibration<br>solution<br>2.00 mg/l<br>500 ml<br>W3T161845  |  | Plug-in card<br>with<br>Process<br>Control<br>W3T158824    |
| Measuring<br>cup 5 pcs<br>W3T158600  | Calibration<br>solution<br>pH 7.00<br>12 ml bag<br>W3T161181   | Plug-in card<br>without<br>Process<br>Control<br>W3T170232<br>Plug-in card<br>with Process<br>Control<br>W3T158838 | Calibration<br>solution<br>600 µS/cm<br>1000 ml<br>W3T161179   | Calibration<br>solution<br>100 mg/l<br>500 ml<br>W3T161884   |  | Plug-in card<br>without<br>Process<br>Control<br>W3T158823 |
| Cable<br>W3T160702   | Calibration<br>solution<br>pH 4.65<br>12 ml Bag<br>W3T161189   | Impedance<br>converter<br>W3T165563  | Plug-in card<br>without<br>Process<br>Control<br>W3T170235<br>Plug-in card<br>with Process<br>Control<br>W3T158841 | Electrolyte<br>set<br>W3T161173<br>5 x 60 ml   |  | Electrode<br>cleaning grit<br>W3T171317                    |
| Plug-in card<br>with Process<br>Control<br>W3T158824<br>Plug-in card<br>without<br>Process<br>Control<br>W3T158823 | Plug-in card<br>without<br>Process<br>Control<br>W3T170233<br>Plug-in card<br>with Process<br>Control<br>W3T158839 |  |  | Plug-in card<br>without<br>Process<br>Control<br>W3T170234<br>Plug-in card<br>with Process<br>Control<br>W3T158840 |  |  |
|  | Impedance<br>converter<br>W3T165563  |  |  | Impedance<br>converter<br>W3T165563  |  |  |
|  | KCL tank to<br>store the<br>sensors 5 ml<br>KCL-3 mol.<br>W3T164482  |  |  |  |  |  |

### Membrane sensors

8.

| Membrane sensors   | Free<br>chlorine FC2 | CIO <sub>2</sub> ,<br>selective CD7 | Ozone,<br>selective OZ7 | Total<br>chlorine TC3 |
|--|----------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Sensor compl. with electrolyte, lapping paper                                  | W3T365498            | W3T164493                           | W3T164494               | W3T391561             |
| Membrane cap<br>incl. lapping paper  | W3T365500            | W3T168103                           | W3T168106               | W3T365500             |
| Membrane cap, plastic<br>incl. lapping paper*                                  |                      |                                     |                         | W3T391564*            |
| Electrolyte  | W3T168101            | W3T168102                           | W3T168105               | W3T171793             |
| Spare part set<br>Consists of lapping paper,<br>elastomer seal and O-ring      | W3T164339            | W3T168104                           | W3T168107               | W3T164339             |
| Maintenance set<br>Consists of electrolyte, membrane<br>cap and spare part set | W3T365601            | W3T168242                           | W3T168243               | W3T391565             |
| Plug-in card without Process<br>Control  | W3T158825            |                                     |                         |                       |
| Plug-in card with Process Control  | W3T158826            |                                     |                         |                       |
| Connector cable combination<br>0.9 m   | W3T172017            |                                     |                         |                       |



Please note

Please use at increased salt concentration (optional)!

### Cable extensions for sensors

| Extension<br>cable/<br>connector-<br>cable<br>combination | DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5  | pH<br>Redox<br>Fluoride<br>(with 2<br>connectors)             | Conductivity<br>(with 1<br>connector)                         | Multi sensor<br>with cable                                    | Membrane<br>sensors<br>(with 1<br>connector)                  | DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup><br>Pool glass<br>electrode<br>(with 1<br>connector) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| 5 m<br>10 m<br>15 m<br>25 m<br>50 m                       | W3T160703<br>W3T160704<br>W3T160705<br>W3T160706<br>W3T160707 | W3T164517<br>W3T164518<br>W3T164544<br>W3T164545<br>W3T164546 | W3T164529<br>W3T164553<br>W3T164554<br>W3T164555<br>W3T164555 | W3T164557<br>W3T164558<br>W3T164559<br>W3T164560<br>W3T164561 | W3T164519<br>W3T164520<br>W3T164538<br>W3T164539<br>W3T164540 | W3T164515<br>W3T164516<br>W3T164547<br>W3T164548<br>W3T164549            |
| Impedance<br>converter                                    |   | W3T165563   |   |   |   |  |

### SFC spare parts

| Part No.                            | Description   |  |  |  |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| W3T166455                           | Spare circuit board A&C board SFC 100 – 240 V AC  |  |  |  |
| W3T166456                           | Spare circuit board A&C board SFC 24 V DC   |  |  |  |
| W3T166457                           | Spare circuit board A&C board SFCSC 100 – 240 V AC  |  |  |  |
| W3T166458                           | Spare circuit board A&C board SFCSC 24 V DC   |  |  |  |
| W3T162628                           | Front cover panel SFC wall mounting   |  |  |  |
| W3T162629                           | Front cover panel SFCSC wall mounting   |  |  |  |
| W3T170285                           | Front cover panel SFC control cabinet installation  |  |  |  |
| W3T170286                           | Front cover panel SFCSC control cabinet installation  |  |  |  |
| W3T158811                           | Basic electronics SFC 100 – 240 V wall mounting/control cabinet installation  |  |  |  |
| W3T158812                           | Basic electronics SFC 24 V DC wall mounting/control cabinet installation  |  |  |  |
| W3T158813                           | Basic electronics SFCSC 100 – 240 V wall mounting/control cabinet installation  |  |  |  |
| W3T158814                           | Basic electronics SFCSC 24 V DC wall mounting/control cabinet installation  |  |  |  |
| W3T168569                           | SD memory card 128 MB - 2GB   |  |  |  |
| W3T172413                           | Connection cable A&C board front panel board approx. 0.5 m  |  |  |  |
| W3T161012                           | Connection cable A&C board front panel board for control cabinet installation approx. 3 m long  |  |  |  |
| W2T506812                           | A&C board fuse for 24 V DC and 100 – 240 V AC (1A time-lag)   |  |  |  |
| W3T172625                           | Varta battery CR2032  |  |  |  |
| W3T164902                           | Update cable for SFC with 9-pin RS232-DSUB plug   |  |  |  |
| W3T158822                           | Accessory set, comprising: screws, dowels, multiple seal inserts, bolts, reducing sealing ring  |  |  |  |
| W2T504443<br>W2T504444<br>W2T504456 | V2A mounting rails for installation of the SFC on a top-hat rail<br>575 mm (length 2 x SFC+ DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 / DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> pool)<br>375 mm (length 2 x SFC+ DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 / DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> pool)<br>175 mm (length 1 x SFC) |  |  |  |

Flow rate monitoring with temperature sensor PT1000

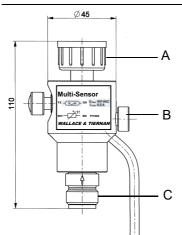
8.

Part No.: W3T166494 pressurized version up to 4 bar



### Vertical installation!

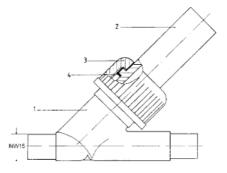
Caution!



- A Drain: G1/2" union nut
- B Sample tap
- C Inlet: G1/2" outside thread

Flow-through adapter pH/mV

Part No.: W3T171332 non-pressurized version W3T159950 pressurized version up to 6 bar

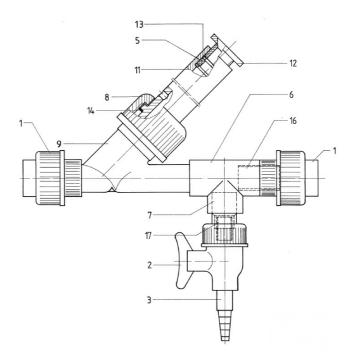


| Item | Part No.   | Description     |
|------|--|-----------------|
| 1    | W3T172856  | Housing         |
| 2    | W3T170970 (non-pressurized)<br>W3T159595 (pressurized) | Electrode mount |
| 3    | W3T170971  | Hexagon cap nut |
| 4    | W3T168861  | O-ring          |

240

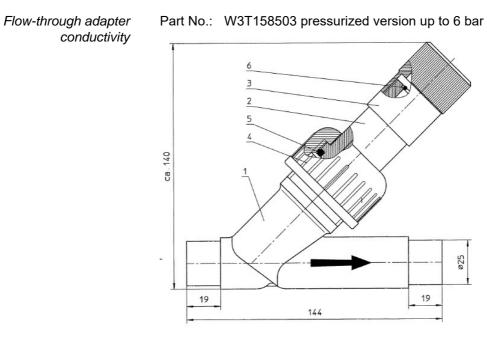
SFC

Part No.: W3T163663 non-pressurized version

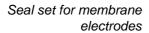


| ltem | Qty   | Part No.  | Description                                    |
|------|-------|-----------|--|
| 1    | 2     | W2T505181 | PVC screw connection,<br>DN15/d20, with O-ring |
| 2    | 1     | W2T507048 | Ball valve                                     |
| 3    |       | W2T506240 | Hose bushing                                   |
| 5    | 1     | W3T168889 | Seal   |
| 6    | 1     | W2T507524 | T-piece  |
| 7    | 1     | W2T505438 | Reduction                                      |
| 8    | 1     | W3T170971 | Hexagon cap nut                                |
| 9    | 1     | W3T172856 | Housing  |
| 11   | 1     | W3T159710 | Electrode mount                                |
| 12   | 1     | W3T167218 | Tightening nut                                 |
| 13   | 2     | W3T167237 | Washer   |
| 14   | 1     | W3T168861 | O-ring   |
| 16   | 37 mm | W2T506051 | Pipe   |
| 17   | 29 mm | W2T506626 | Pipe   |

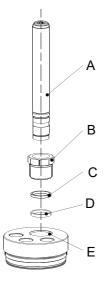
8.



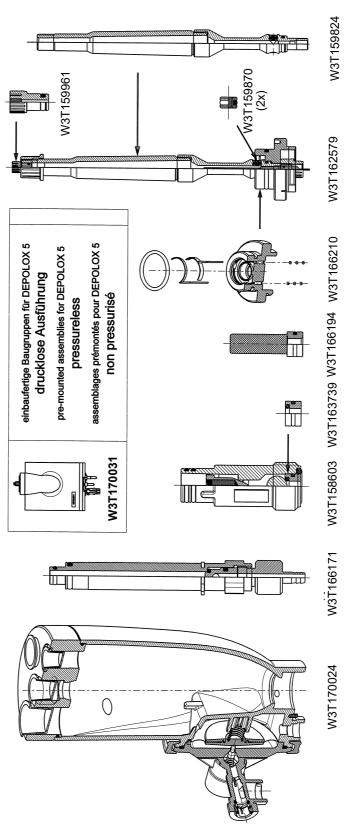
| ltem | Qty | Part No.  | Description              |
|------|-----|-----------|--------------------------|
| 1    | 1   | W3T161463 | Strainer housing         |
| 2    | 1   | W3T158502 | Electrode mount          |
| 3    | 1   | W3T158501 | Electrode tightening nut |
| 4    | 1   | W3T163440 | Hexagon cap nut          |
| 5    | 1   | W3T172720 | O-ring                   |
| 6    | 1   | W3T172556 | O-ring                   |

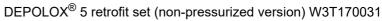


Part No.: W3T158755 pressure-tight version



- A Membrane electrode, type TC1/TC3, FC1/FC2, CD7, OZ7...
- B Union bush G1" W3T171788
- C Locking ring W3T171789
- D Gasket W3T164773
- E Cell body cover W3T158754





Part No.

W3T170031

W3T170024

W3T166171

W3T158603

W3T158882

| Parts list for DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> 5 non-pressurized version W3T170031 |
|---|
|---|

Flow cell module, non-pressurized

Cell body D5-DL, complete

Drainage unit

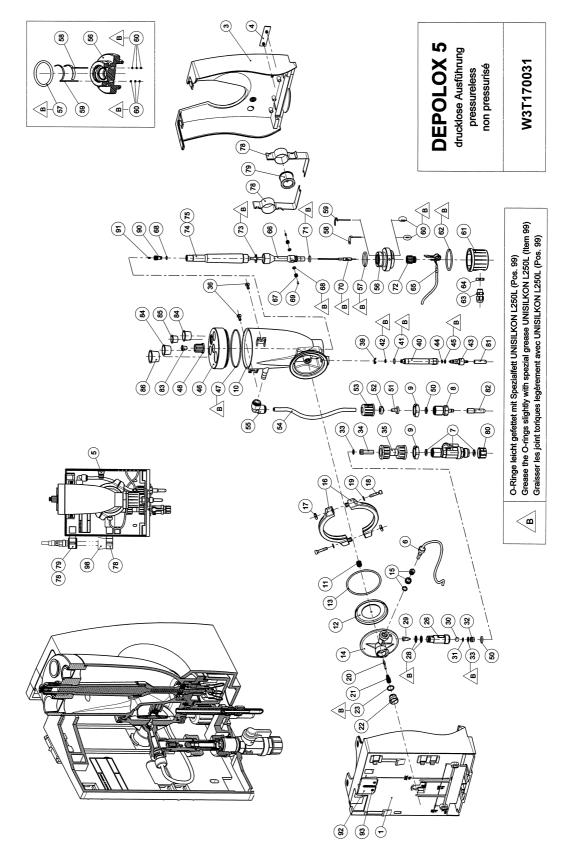
Non-return valve

Designation

| W3T163739                    | Valve seat complete                            |
|------------------------------|--|
| W3T166194                    | Fine filter                                    |
| W3T166210                    | Electrode holder complete                      |
| W3T162579                    | Electrode cell, complete, without electrolyte  |
| W3T159961                    | Plug, complete, non-pressurized                |
| W3T159870                    | Diaphragm complete                             |
|                              |  |
| W3T159824                    | Electrode housing, non-pressurized             |
| W3T159824                    | Electrode housing, non-pressurized             |
|                              |  |
| W3T159824<br>Part No.        | Electrode housing, non-pressurized Designation |
|                              |  |
| Part No.                     | Designation                                    |
| <b>Part No.</b><br>W3T170063 | Designation Accessories set D5-DL              |

Set of spare parts for volumetric flow control

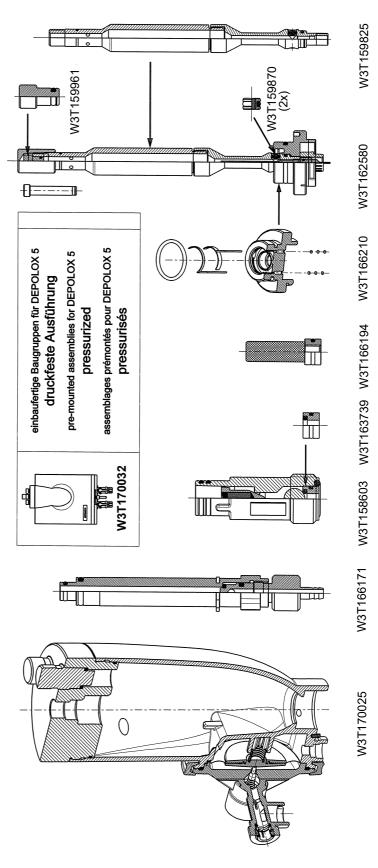
8.



Drawing of DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 non-pressurized version W3T170031

| Item                       | Part No.               | Designation  |
|----------------------------|------------------------|--|
| 1                          | W3T160628              | Basic housing  |
| 1,92,93                    | W3T164571              | Basic housing, pre-assembled                                     |
| 3                          | W3T160629              | Housing cover  |
| 4                          | W3T172042              | Product label  |
| 5                          | W2T506143              | Cable clamp  |
| 6                          | W3T172029              | Multi sensor   |
| 7                          | W3T166170              | Shut-off valve   |
| 8                          | W3T158593              | Discharge nozzle   |
| 9                          | W2T507615              | Flat nut   |
| 10                         | W3T158561              | Cell body  |
| 11<br>12                   | W3T164226<br>W3T158569 | Compression spring<br>Membrane unit                              |
| 13                         | W3T160654              | O-ring   |
| 14                         | W3T158595              | Control valve body   |
| 15                         | W2T504209              | Plastic cartridge  |
| 16                         | W3T160649              | V profile clamp  |
| 17                         | W3T158567              | Square nut   |
| 18                         | W2T504659              | Cylinder screw   |
| 19                         | W2T506019              | Washer   |
| 20                         | W3T158572              | Valve pin  |
| 21                         | W3T172795              | Compression spring   |
| 22                         | W3T158573              | Adjusting screw  |
| 23                         | W3T160357              | O-ring   |
| 26<br>28                   | W3T160648<br>W3T161396 | Check valve housing  |
| 28                         | W3T161396<br>W3T169827 | O-ring<br>Float with magnet                                      |
| 30                         | W3T172946              | Ball   |
| 31                         | W3T172949              | O-ring   |
| 32                         | W3T159707              | Insert   |
| 33                         | W3T172975              | O-ring   |
| 34                         | W3T168189              | Fine filter  |
| 33,34                      | W3T166194              | Fine filter, complete  |
| 35                         | W3T158602              | Filter housing   |
| 36                         | W2T505463              | Plastic self-tapping screw                                       |
| 39                         | W3T172041              | Securing ring  |
| 40                         | W3T158576              | Outlet drain pipe  |
| 41                         | W3T172997              | O-ring   |
| 42                         | W3T164597              | O-ring   |
| 43<br>44                   | W3T158575<br>W3T166160 | Drain screw<br>EPDM Flat gasket                                  |
| 45                         | W3T172556              | O-ring   |
| 46                         | W3T158565              | Cell body cover  |
| 47                         | W3T160657              | O-ring   |
| 48                         | W3T165266              | Knurled nut  |
| 50                         | W3T172861              | O-ring   |
| 51                         | W3T161501              | Hose bushing   |
| 52                         | W3T169815              | Locking ring   |
| 53                         | W3T161502              | Union nut  |
| 50-53                      | W3T171453              | Hose connection parts  |
| 54                         | W3T158601              | Hose   |
| 55                         | W2T505093              | Angle-reducing connector   |
| 56                         | W3T166209              | Electrode mount  |
| 57<br>58                   | W3T168875              | O-ring<br>Warking electrode                                      |
| 59                         | W3T163795<br>W3T167461 | Working electrode<br>Counter electrode                           |
| 60                         | W3T168904              | O-ring   |
| 61                         | W3T158562              | Hinged cover   |
| 62                         | W3T168868              | O-ring   |
| 63                         | W2T504177              | Cable union  |
| 64                         | W3T160549              | Hexagonal nut  |
| 65                         | W3T160702              | Connector cable combination                                      |
| 66                         | W3T159653              | Electrode housing  |
| 67-69                      | W3T159870              | Diaphragm complete   |
| 70                         | W3T169295              | Reference electrode  |
| 71                         | W3T161424              | O-ring   |
| 72                         | W3T165267              | Knurled nut  |
| 73<br>74                   | W3T161464<br>W3T165565 | Flat gasket  |
| 74<br>75                   | W31165565<br>W3T172885 | KCL electrolyte set, 100ml<br>Container, non-pressurized version |
| 75                         | W3T161396              | O-ring   |
| 78                         | W3T166169              | Fastening clip, coated   |
| 79                         | W3T172045              | Electrode mount  |
| 80                         | W3T161561              | Screw cap  |
| 81                         | W3T168162              | Protective cap   |
| 82                         | W3T164588              | Protective cap   |
| 83                         | W3T161537              | Protection plug  |
| 84                         | W3T169029              | Protection plug  |
| 85                         | W3T169044              | Protection plug  |
| 86                         | W3T164573              | Protection plug  |
| 68,90,91                   | W3T159961              | Plug complete  |
| 92                         | W3T160627              | Wall brackets  |
| 93                         | W2T504752              | Sheet metal screw  |
| 98<br>Accessories          | W3T158600              | Measuring beaker, 5 items  |
| Accessories                | W3T161452              | Felt ring, transit support                                       |
| Accessories                | W3T171453<br>W3T167518 | Hose connection parts ID6xWdg1                                   |
| Accessories<br>Accessories | W3T167518<br>W3T158743 | Hose connection parts ID6xWdg3<br>Electrode cleaning grit "QK"   |
| Accessories                | W3T173182              | Fastening kit  |
|                            |                        | 1 ·  |

# Parts list for DEPOLOX $^{\! @}$ 5 non-pressurized version W3T170031

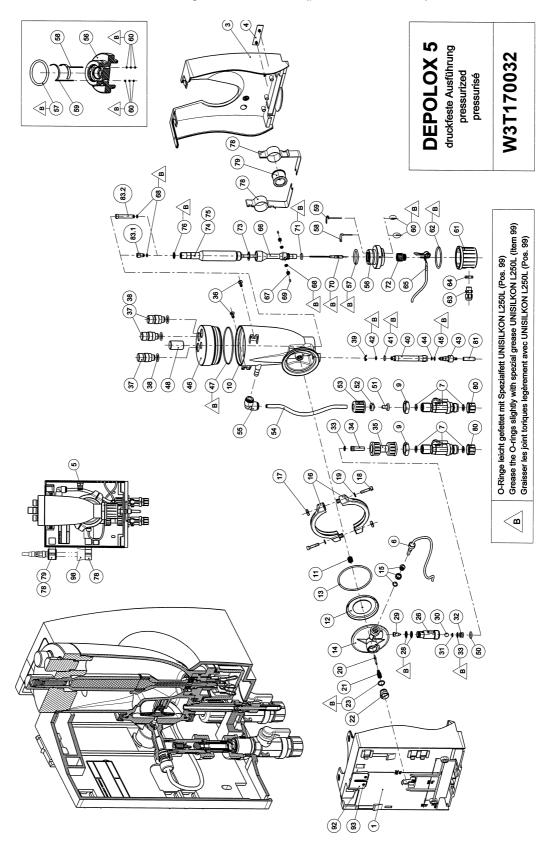


# Retrofit set for DEPOLOX $^{\ensuremath{\mathbb{R}}}$ 5 (pressurized version) W3T170032

| Part No.  | Designation                                   |
|-----------|---|
| W3T170032 | Flow block assembly, pressurized              |
| W3T170025 | Cell body D5-DF, complete                     |
| W3T166171 | Drainage unit                                 |
| W3T158603 | Non-return valve                              |
| W3T163739 | Valve seat complete                           |
| W3T166194 | Fine filter                                   |
| W3T166210 | Electrode holder complete                     |
| W3T162580 | Electrode cell, complete, without electrolyte |
| W3T163746 | Plug, complete, pressurized                   |
| W3T159870 | Diaphragm complete                            |
| W3T159825 | Electrode housing, pressurized                |

Parts list for  $\text{DEPOLOX}^{\textcircled{R}}$  5 (pressurized version) W3T170032

| Part No.  | Designation                                    |
|-----------|--|
| W3T170064 | Accessories set D5-DF                          |
| W3T158875 | Maintenance part set, annual maintenance       |
| W3T170072 | Maintenance part set, every 4 years            |
| W3T158882 | Set of spare parts for volumetric flow control |

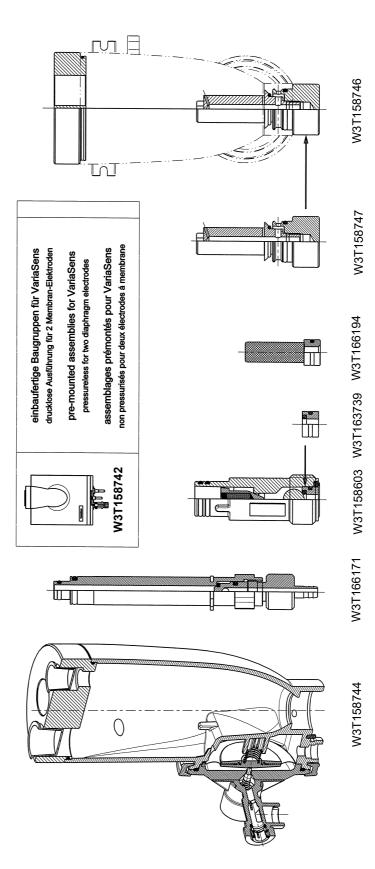


# Drawing of DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> 5 (pressurized version) W3T170032

п

| Item        | Part No.               | Designation                                 |
|-------------|------------------------|---|
| 1           | W3T160628              | Basic housing                               |
| 1,92,93     | W3T164571              | Basic housing, pre-assembled                |
| 3           | W3T160629              | Housing cover                               |
| 4           | W3T172042              | Product label                               |
| 5           | W2T506143              | Cable clamp                                 |
| 6           | W3T172029              | Multi sensor                                |
| 7           | W3T166170              | Shut-off valve                              |
| 9           | W2T507615              | Flat nut                                    |
| 10          | W3T158560              | Cell body                                   |
| 11          | W3T164226              | Compression spring                          |
| 12          | W3T158569              | Membrane unit                               |
| 13<br>14    | W3T160654              | O-ring                                      |
| 14          | W3T158595<br>W2T504209 | Control valve body Plastic cartridge        |
| 16          | W3T160649              | V profile clamp                             |
| 17          | W3T158567              | Square nut                                  |
| 18          | W2T504659              | Cylinder screw                              |
| 19          | W2T506019              | Washer                                      |
| 20          | W3T158572              | Valve pin                                   |
| 21          | W3T172795              | Compression spring                          |
| 22          | W3T158573              | Adjusting screw                             |
| 23          | W3T160357              | O-ring                                      |
| 26          | W3T160648              | Check valve housing                         |
| 28          | W3T161396              | O-ring                                      |
| 29          | W3T169827              | Float with magnet                           |
| 30          | W3T172946              | Ball  |
| 31          | W3T172949              | O-ring                                      |
| 32          | W3T159707              | Insert                                      |
| 33          | W3T172975              | O-ring                                      |
| 34          | W3T168189              | Fine filter                                 |
| 33,34<br>35 | W3T166194<br>W3T158602 | Fine filter, complete                       |
| 35          | W31158602<br>W2T505463 | Filter housing Plastic self-tanning screw   |
| 30          | W3T161450              | Plastic self-tapping screw Plug             |
| 38          | W3T168859              | O-ring                                      |
| 39          | W3T172041              | Securing ring                               |
| 40          | W3T158576              | Outlet drain pipe                           |
| 41          | W3T172997              | O-ring                                      |
| 42          | W3T164597              | O-ring                                      |
| 43          | W3T158575              | Drain screw                                 |
| 44          | W3T166160              | EPDM Flat gasket                            |
| 45          | W3T172556              | O-ring                                      |
| 46          | W3T158564              | Cell body cover                             |
| 47          | W3T160657              | O-ring                                      |
| 48          | W3T171088              | Knurled nut                                 |
| 50          | W3T172861              | O-ring                                      |
| 51          | W3T161501              | Hose bushing                                |
| 52          | W3T169815              | Locking ring                                |
| 53          | W3T161502              | Union nut                                   |
| 50-53       | W3T171453              | Hose connection parts                       |
| 54<br>55    | W3T158601<br>W2T505093 | Hose Angle reducing connector               |
| 56          | W3T166209              | Angle-reducing connector<br>Electrode mount |
| 57          | W3T168875              | O-ring                                      |
| 58          | W3T163795              | Working electrode                           |
| 59          | W3T167461              | Counter electrode                           |
| 60          | W3T168904              | O-ring                                      |
| 61          | W3T158562              | Hinged cover                                |
| 62          | W3T168868              | O-ring                                      |
| 63          | W2T504177              | Cable union                                 |
| 64          | W3T160549              | Hexagonal nut                               |
| 65          | W3T160702              | Connector cable combination                 |
| 66          | W3T159653              | Electrode housing                           |
| 67-69       | W3T159870              | Diaphragm complete                          |
| 70          | W3T169295              | Reference electrode                         |
| 71          | W3T161424              | O-ring                                      |
| 72          | W3T165267              | Knurled nut                                 |
| 73          | W3T161464              | Flat gasket                                 |
| 74          | W3T165565              | KCL electrolyte set, 100ml                  |
| 75          | W3T171171<br>W3T161396 | Container, pressurized version<br>O-ring    |
| 76<br>78    | W3T161396              | O-nng<br>Fastening clip, coated             |
| 78          | W3T166169<br>W3T172045 | Electrode mount                             |
| 80          | W3T161561              | Screw cap                                   |
| 81          | W3T168162              | Protective cap                              |
| 83.1, 68    | W3T163746              | Plug, complete, for operation               |
| 83.1        | W3T159726              | Plug, for operation                         |
| 83.2, 68    | W3T159992              | Plug, complete, transit support             |
| 83.2        | W3T159757              | Plug, transit support                       |
| 92          | W3T160627              | Wall brackets                               |
| 93          | W2T504752              | Sheet metal screw                           |
| 98          | W3T158600              | Measuring beaker, 5 items                   |
| Accessories | W3T161452              | Felt ring, transit support                  |
| Accessories | W3T171453              | Hose connection parts ID6xWdg1              |
| Accessories | W3T167518              | Hose connection parts ID6xWdg3              |
| Accessories | W3T158743              | Electrode cleaning grit "QK"                |
| Accessories | W3T173182              | Fastening kit                               |

# Parts list for $\text{DEPOLOX}^{\textcircled{R}}$ 5 (pressurized version) W3T170032



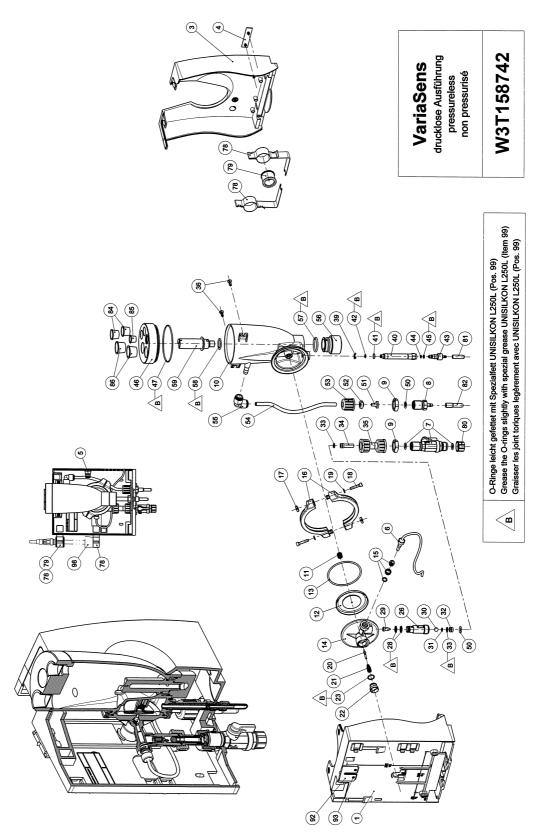
### VariaSens retrofit set (non-pressurized version) W3T158742

8.

VariaSens parts list (non-pressurized version) W3T158742

| Part No.  | Designation                       |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| W3T158742 | Flow cell module, non-pressurized |
| W3T158744 | Cell body VS-DL, complete         |
| W3T166171 | Drainage unit                     |
| W3T158603 | Non-return valve                  |
| W3T163739 | Valve seat complete               |
| W3T166194 | Fine filter                       |
| W3T158747 | Flow body complete                |
| W3T158746 | Conversion kit D5-DL/VS-DL        |

| Part No.  | Designation                                    |
|-----------|--|
| W3T158745 | Accessories set VS-DL                          |
| W3T158876 | Maintenance part set, annual maintenance       |
| W3T158750 | Maintenance part set, every 4 years            |
| W3T158882 | Set of spare parts for volumetric flow control |



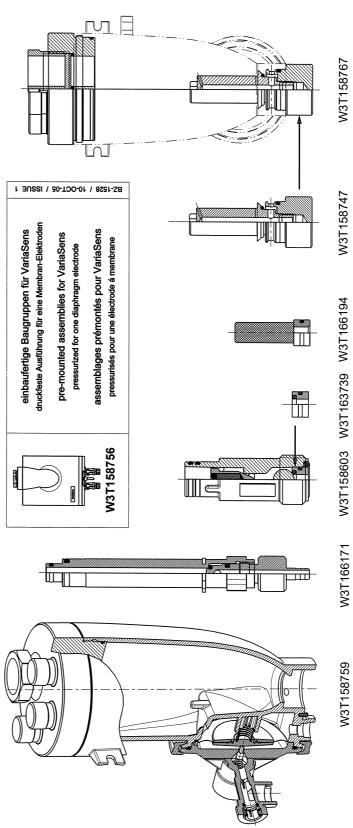
#### VariaSens drawing (non-pressurized version) W3T158742

Г

.

| ltem        | Part No.                | Designation                    |  |
|-------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| 1           | W3T160628               | Basic housing                  |  |
| 1,92,93     | W3T164571               | Basic housing, pre-assembled   |  |
| 3           | W3T160629               | Housing cover                  |  |
| 4           | W3T160908               | Product label                  |  |
| 5           | W2T506143               | Cable clamp                    |  |
| 6           | W3T172029               | Multi sensor                   |  |
| 7           | W3T166170               | Shut-off valve                 |  |
| 8           | W3T158593               | Discharge nozzle               |  |
| 9           | W2T507615               | Flat nut                       |  |
| 10          | W3T158561               | Cell body                      |  |
| 11          | W3T164226               | Compression spring             |  |
| 12          | W3T158569               | Membrane unit                  |  |
| 13          | W3T160654               | O-ring                         |  |
| 14          | W3T158595               | Control valve body             |  |
| 15          | W2T504209               | Plastic cartridge              |  |
| 16          | W3T160649               | V profile clamp                |  |
| 17          | W3T158567               | Square nut                     |  |
| 18          | W2T504659               | Cylinder screw                 |  |
| 19          | W2T506019               | Washer                         |  |
| 20          | W3T158572               | Valve pin                      |  |
| 21          | W3T172795               | Compression spring             |  |
| 22          | W3T158573               | Adjusting screw                |  |
| 23          | W3T160357               | O-ring                         |  |
| 26          | W3T160648               | Check valve housing            |  |
| 28<br>29    | W3T161396<br>W3T169827  | O-ring                         |  |
| -           | W3T172946               | Float with magnet              |  |
| 30<br>31    | W3T172940<br>W3T172949  | Ball                           |  |
| 32          | W3T159707               | O-ring<br>Insert               |  |
| 33          | W3T172975               | O-ring                         |  |
| 34          | W3T168189               | Fine filter                    |  |
| 33,34       | W3T166194               | Fine filter, complete          |  |
| 35          | W3T158602               | Filter housing                 |  |
| 36          | W2T505463               | Plastic self-tapping screw     |  |
| 39          | W3T172041               | Securing ring                  |  |
| 40          | W3T158576               | Outlet drain pipe              |  |
| 41          | W3T172997               | O-ring                         |  |
| 42          | W3T164597               | O-ring                         |  |
| 43          | W3T158575               | Drain screw                    |  |
| 44          | W3T166160               | EPDM Flat gasket               |  |
| 45          | W3T172556               | O-ring                         |  |
| 46          | W3T158738               | Cell body cover                |  |
| 47          | W3T160657               | O-ring                         |  |
| 50          | W3T172861               | O-ring                         |  |
| 51          | W3T161501               | Hose bushing                   |  |
| 52          | W3T169815               | Locking ring                   |  |
| 53          | W3T161502               | Union nut                      |  |
| 50-53       | W3T171453               | Hose connection parts          |  |
| 54          | W3T158601               | Hose                           |  |
| 55          | W2T505093               | Angle-reducing connector       |  |
| 56          | W3T158740               | Drain plug                     |  |
| 57          | W3T168875               | O-ring                         |  |
| 58          | W3T167941               | O-ring                         |  |
| 59          | W3T158739               | Flow body                      |  |
| 78          | W3T166169               | Fastening clip, coated         |  |
| 79          | W3T172045               | Electrode mount                |  |
| 80          | W3T161561               | Screw cap                      |  |
| 81          | W3T168162               | Protective cap                 |  |
| 82          | W3T164588               | Protective cap                 |  |
| 84          | W3T169029               | Protection plug                |  |
| 85          | W3T169044               | Protection plug                |  |
| 86          | W3T164574               | Protection plug                |  |
| 92          | W3T160627               | Wall brackets                  |  |
| 93          | W2T504752               | Sheet metal screw              |  |
| 98          | W3T158600<br>W3T1714531 | Measuring beaker, 5 items      |  |
| Accessories |                         | Hose connection parts ID6xWdg1 |  |
| Accessories | W3T167518               | Hose connection parts ID6xWdg3 |  |
| Accessories | W3T173182               | Fastening kit                  |  |

#### VariaSens parts list (non-pressurized version) W3T158742



#### VariaSens retrofit set (pressurized version) W3T158756

VariaSens parts list (pressurized version) W3T158756

| Part No.  | Designation                      |  |
|-----------|----------------------------------|--|
| W3T158756 | Flow block assembly, pressurized |  |
| W3T158759 | Cell body VS-DF, complete        |  |
| W3T166171 | Drainage unit                    |  |
| W3T158603 | Non-return valve                 |  |
| W3T163739 | Valve seat complete              |  |
| W3T166194 | Fine filter                      |  |
| W3T158747 | Flow body complete               |  |
| W3T158767 | Conversion kit D5-DF/VS-DF       |  |

| Part No.  | Designation                                    |  |  |
|-----------|--|--|--|
| W3T158758 | Accessories set VS-DF                          |  |  |
| W3T158877 | Maintenance part set, annual maintenance       |  |  |
| W3T158879 | Maintenance part set, every 4 years            |  |  |
| W3T158882 | Set of spare parts for volumetric flow control |  |  |

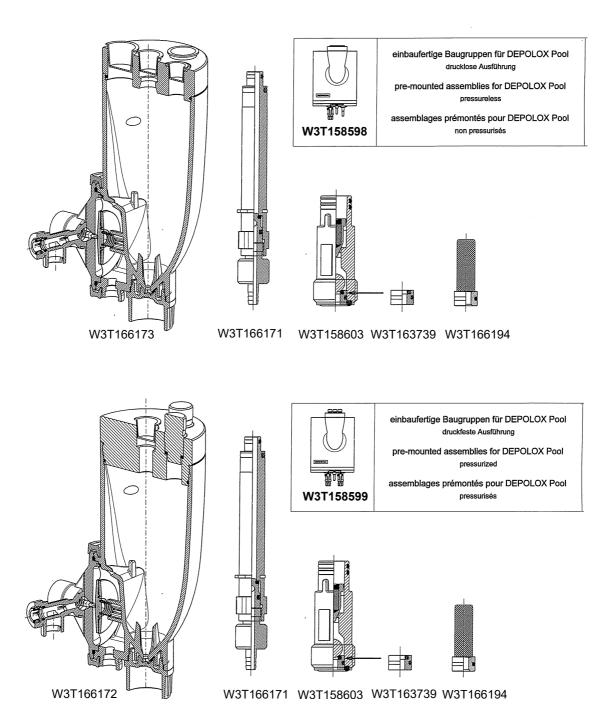


6 ◄ druckfeste Ausführung pressurized pressurisé W3T158756 VariaSens (%) (P 8 O-Ringe leicht gefettet mit Spezialfett UNISILKON L250L (Pos. 99) Grease the O-rings slightly with spezial grease UNISILKON L250L (Item 99) Graisser les joint toriques legèrement avec UNISILKON L250L (Pos. 99) ଞ S7 B 3 8 (8) 8 (\$ <u>\_</u> SD: (4)(4) **(\$**) ۲ (9) 001 ۹DØ M 8 **2 (b) (3) (4)** 8 89 8 **(†** 9 ( **5** 6 ۲ ł Þ è OFINE -Ò) ſ 35 3 (X) (X) 38 (8) 6 ·OÉD·C (1) (1) (**เ**ว 9 (٩) (≌ Ħ 8 **78** 8 8 ഹ € **(£**) 8 (P) 8 8 8 4 **R**) B ৯ 33 33 54 (8 ~ 8 ଞ E

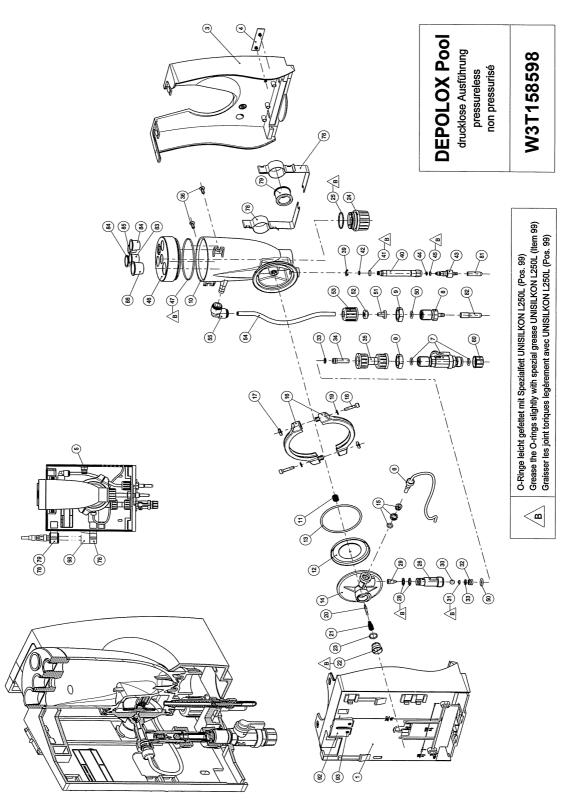
#### VariaSens drawing (pressurized version) W3T158756

| Item     | Part No.                            | Designation                      |
|----------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1        | W3T160628                           | Basic housing                    |
| 1,92,93  | W3T164571                           | Basic housing, pre-assembled     |
| 3        | W3T160629                           | Housing cover                    |
| 4        | W3T160908                           | Product label                    |
| 5        | W2T506143                           | Cable clamp                      |
| 6        | W3T172029                           | Multi sensor                     |
| 7        | W3T166170                           | Shut-off valve                   |
| 9        | W2T507615                           | Flat nut                         |
| 10       | W3T158560                           | Cell body                        |
| 11<br>12 | W3T164226<br>W3T158569              | Compression spring               |
| 12       | W3T156569<br>W3T160654              | Membrane unit<br>O-ring          |
| 13       | W3T158595                           | Control valve body               |
| 15       | W31158595<br>W2T504209              | Plastic cartridge                |
| 16       | W3T160649                           | V profile clamp                  |
| 17       | W3T158567                           | Square nut                       |
| 18       | W2T504659                           | Cylinder screw                   |
| 19       | W2T506019                           | Washer                           |
| 20       | W3T158572                           | Valve pin                        |
| 20       | W3T172795                           | Compression spring               |
| 22       | W3T172733<br>W3T158573              | Adjusting screw                  |
| 23       | W3T160357                           | O-ring                           |
| 26       | W3T160648                           | Check valve housing              |
| 28       | W3T161396                           | O-ring                           |
| 29       | W3T169827                           | Float with magnet                |
| 30       | W3T172946                           | Ball                             |
| 31       | W3T172949                           | O-ring                           |
| 32       | W3T159707                           | Insert                           |
| 33       | W3T172975                           | O-ring                           |
| 34       | W3T168189                           | Fine filter                      |
| 33,34    | W3T166194                           | Fine filter, complete            |
| 35       | W3T158602                           | Filter housing                   |
| 36       | W2T505463                           | Plastic self-tapping screw       |
| 37       | W3T161450                           | Plug                             |
| 38       | W3T168859                           | O-ring                           |
| 39       | W3T172041                           | Securing ring                    |
| 40       | W3T158576                           | Outlet drain pipe                |
| 41       | W3T172997                           | O-ring                           |
| 42       | W3T164597                           | O-ring                           |
| 43       | W3T158575                           | Drain screw                      |
| 44       | W3T166160                           | EPDM Flat gasket                 |
| 45       | W3T172556                           | O-ring                           |
| 46       | W3T158754                           | Cell body cover                  |
| 47       | W3T160657                           | O-ring                           |
| 50       | W3T172861                           | O-ring                           |
| 51       | W3T161501                           | Hose bushing                     |
| 52       | W3T169815                           | Locking ring                     |
| 53       | W3T161502                           | Union nut                        |
| 50-53    | W3T171453                           | Hose connection parts            |
| 54       | W3T158601                           | Hose                             |
| 55       | W2T505093                           | Angle-reducing connector         |
| 56       | W3T158740                           | Drain plug                       |
| 57       | W3T168875                           | O-ring                           |
| 58<br>59 | W3T167941                           | O-ring<br>Elew body              |
|          | W3T158739                           | Flow body                        |
| 60       | W3T171788                           | Screw-in part G1"                |
| 61<br>62 | W3T163376<br>W3T168861              | Washer<br>O-ring                 |
| 78       | W3T166169                           | Fastening clip, coated           |
| 79       | W3T172045                           | Electrode mount                  |
| 80       | W3T172045<br>W3T161561              | Screw cap                        |
| 81       | W3T161561<br>W3T168162              | Protective cap                   |
| 81       | W3T168162<br>W3T164588              | Protective cap<br>Protective cap |
| 92       | W3T160627                           | Wall brackets                    |
| 93       | W2T504752                           | Sheet metal screw                |
|          |                                     | Measuring beaker, 5 items        |
|          |                                     |                                  |
| 98       | W3T158600<br>W3T171453              |                                  |
|          | W3T158600<br>W3T171453<br>W3T167518 | Hose connection parts ID6xWdg3   |

#### VariaSens parts list (pressurized version) W3T158756



Ready-to-install assembly for DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool



Drawing DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool non-pressurized version W3T158598

| Parts list DEPOLOX <sup>®</sup> | Pool non-pressurized version |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Part No. W3T158598              | REF: WAE4161                 |

| ltem | Part No.               | Designation                     |
|------|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1    | W3T164571              | Basic housing, pre-assembled    |
| 2    | W2T507548              | Type plate                      |
| 3    | W3T160629              | Housing cover                   |
| 4    | W3T172038              | Product label                   |
| 5    | W2T506143              | Cable clamp                     |
| 6    | W3T172029              | Multi sensor                    |
| 7    | W3T166170              | Shut-off valve                  |
| 8    | W3T158593              | Discharge nozzle                |
| 9    | W2T507615              | Flat nut                        |
| 10   | W3T158594              | Cell body                       |
| 11   | W3T164226              | Compression spring              |
| 12   | W3T158569              | Membrane unit                   |
| 13   | W3T160654              | O-ring                          |
| 14   | W3T158595              | Control valve body              |
| 15   | W2T504209              | Plastic cartridge               |
| 16   | W3T160649              | V profile clamp                 |
| 17   | W3T158567              | Square nut                      |
| 18   | W2T504659              | Cylinder screw                  |
| 19   | W2T506019              | Washer                          |
| 20   | W3T158572              |                                 |
| 20   | W3T158572<br>W3T172795 | Valve pin<br>Compression spring |
| 21   |                        |                                 |
|      | W3T158573              | Adjusting screw                 |
| 23   | W3T160357              | O-ring                          |
| 24   | W3T160650              | Flow distributor cap            |
| 25   | W3T160655              | O-ring                          |
| 26   | W3T160648              | Check valve housing             |
| 28   | W3T161396              | O-ring                          |
| 29   | W3T169827              | Cone                            |
| 30   | W3T172946              | Ball                            |
| 31   | W3T172949              | O-ring                          |
| 32   | W3T159707              | Insert                          |
| 33   | W3T172975              | O-ring                          |
| 34   | W3T168189              | Fine filter                     |
| 35   | W3T158602              | Filter unit                     |
| 36   | W2T505463              | Cross recessed head screw       |
| 39   | W3T172041              | Securing ring                   |
| 40   | W3T158576              | Outlet drain pipe               |
| 41   | W3T172997              | O-ring                          |
| 42   | W3T164597              | O-ring                          |
| 43   | W3T158575              | Drain screw                     |
| 44   | W3T166160              | EPDM flat gasket                |
| 45   | W3T172556              | O-ring                          |
| 46   | W3T158565              | Cell body cover                 |
| 47   | W3T160657              | O-ring                          |
| 50   | W3T172861              | O-ring                          |
| 51   | W3T161501              | Hose bushing                    |
| 52   | W3T169815              | Locking ring                    |
| 53   | W3T161502              | Union nut                       |
| 54   | W3T158601              | Hose                            |
| 55   | W2T505093              | Angle-reducing connector        |
| 78   | W3T166169              | Fastening clip                  |
| 79   | W3T172045              | Electrode mount                 |
| 80   | W3T161561              | Screw cap                       |
| 81   | W3T168162              | Protective cap                  |
| 82   | W3T164588              | Protective cap                  |
| 83   | W3T161453              | Protection plug                 |
| 84   | W3T169029              | Protection plug                 |
| 85   | W3T169044              | Protection plug                 |
| 86   | W3T164574              | Protection plug                 |
| 98   | W3T158600              | Beaker                          |
| 90   | VV31158600             | Deaker                          |

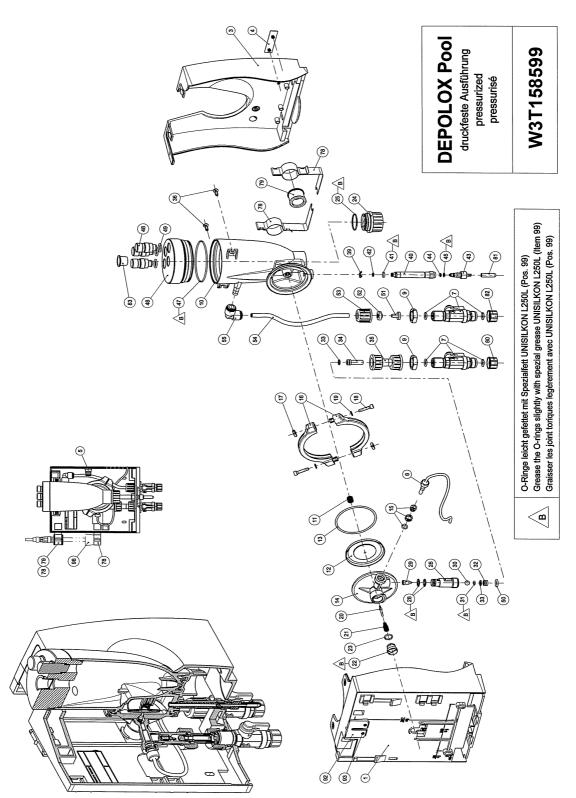
# Pre-assembled component groups

| Item      | Part No.            | Designation                                 |  |
|-----------|---------------------|---|--|
| W3T166173 | Cell body, complete | consisting of: Items 10-25,<br>46-47, 83-86 |  |
| W3T158603 | Non-return valve    | consisting of: Items 26, 28-33, 50, 80      |  |
| W3T166171 | Drainage unit       | consisting of: Items 39-45,<br>81           |  |
| W3T166194 | Fine filter         | consisting of: Items 33-34                  |  |
| W3T163739 | Valve seat complete | consisting of: Items 31-33                  |  |

#### Spare parts sets

| Item      | Part No.   | Designation |  |
|-----------|--|-------------|--|
| W3T166192 | Accessories set DP-D   | L           |  |
| W3T166181 | Maintenance part<br>set, annualconsisting of: Pos. 1, 32,<br>44, 45, 95, 98, 99, 100<br>special gease UNISILKON<br>(tube, W2T504248) |             |  |
| W3T170073 | Maintenance part<br>set, every 4 yearsconsisting of: Pos. 1, 7, 25,<br>28, 32, 41, 42, 44, 45, 47,<br>50, 95, 98, 99, 100            |             |  |
| W3T158882 | Set of spare parts for volumetric flow control   |             |  |

SFC



Drawing of DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool pressurized version W3T158599

| Item | Part No.               | Designation                  |
|------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1    | W3T164571              | Basic housing, pre-assembled |
| 2    | W2T507548              | Type plate                   |
| 3    | W3T160629              | Housing cover                |
| 4    | W3T172038              | Product label                |
| 5    | W2T506143              | Cable clamp                  |
| 6    | W3T172029              | Multi sensor                 |
| 7    | W3T166170              | Shut-off valve               |
| 9    | W2T507615              | Flat nut                     |
| 10   | W3T158559              | Cell body                    |
| 11   | W3T164226              | Compression spring           |
| 12   | W3T158569              | Membrane unit                |
| 13   | W3T160654              | O-ring                       |
| 14   | W3T158595              | Control valve body           |
| 15   | W2T504209              | Plastic cartridge            |
| 16   | W3T160649              | V profile clamp              |
| 17   | W3T158567              | Square nut                   |
| 18   | W3T130307<br>W2T504659 | Cylinder screw               |
| 19   | W2T506019              | Washer                       |
| 20   | W3T158572              |                              |
| 20   | W3T158572<br>W3T172795 | Valve pin                    |
| 21   | W3T172795<br>W3T158573 | Compression spring           |
| 22   | W31158573<br>W3T160357 | Adjusting screw              |
|      |                        | O-ring                       |
| 24   | W3T160650              | Flow distributor cap         |
| 25   | W3T160655              | O-ring                       |
| 26   | W3T160648              | Check valve housing          |
| 28   | W3T161396              | O-ring                       |
| 29   | W3T169827              | Cone                         |
| 30   | W3T172946              | Ball                         |
| 31   | W3T172949              | O-ring                       |
| 32   | W3T159707              | Insert                       |
| 33   | W3T172975              | O-ring                       |
| 34   | W3T168189              | Fine filter                  |
| 35   | W3T158602              | Filter unit                  |
| 36   | W2T505463              | Cross recessed head screw    |
| 39   | W3T172041              | Securing ring                |
| 40   | W3T158576              | Outlet drain pipe            |
| 41   | W3T172997              | O-ring                       |
| 42   | W3T164597              | O-ring                       |
| 43   | W3T158575              | Drain screw                  |
| 44   | W3T166160              | EPDM flat gasket             |
| 45   | W3T172556              | O-ring                       |
| 46   | W3T158563              | Cell body cover              |
| 47   | W3T160657              | O-ring                       |
| 48   | W3T161450              | Plug                         |
| 49   | W3T168859              | O-ring                       |
| 50   | W3T172861              | O-ring                       |
| 51   | W3T161501              | Hose bushing                 |
| 52   | W3T169815              | Locking ring                 |
| 53   | W3T161502              | Union nut                    |
| 54   | W3T158601              | Hose                         |
| 55   | W2T505093              | Angle-reducing connector     |
| 78   | W3T166169              | Fastening clip               |
| 79   | W3T172045              | Electrode mount              |
| 80   | W3T161561              | Screw cap                    |
| 81   | W3T168162              | Protective cap               |
| 83   | W3T161453              | Protection plug              |
| 98   | W3T158600              | Beaker                       |
| 30   | W31130000              | Dearci                       |

#### Parts list DEPOLOX<sup>®</sup> Pool non-pressurized version Part No. W3T158599 REF: WAE4162

Pre-assembled component groups

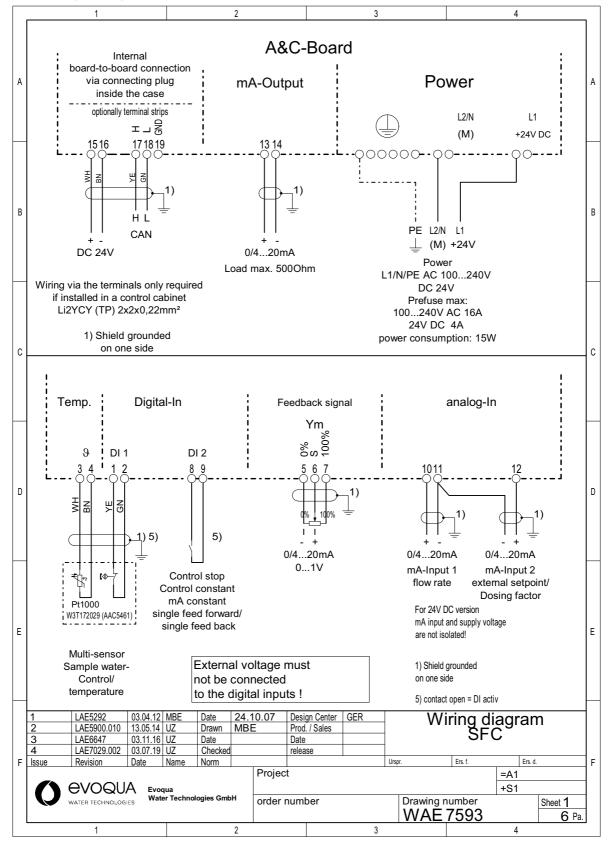
| Item      | Part No.            | Designation                                  |  |
|-----------|---------------------|--|--|
| W3T166172 | Cell body, complete | consisting of: Items 10-25,<br>46-49, 55, 83 |  |
| W3T158603 | Non-return valve    | consisting of: Items 26,<br>28-33, 50, 80    |  |
| W3T166171 | Drainage unit       | consisting of: Items 39-45,<br>81            |  |
| W3T166194 | Fine filter         | consisting of: Items 33-34                   |  |
| W3T163739 | Valve seat complete | consisting of: Items 31-33                   |  |

#### Spare parts sets

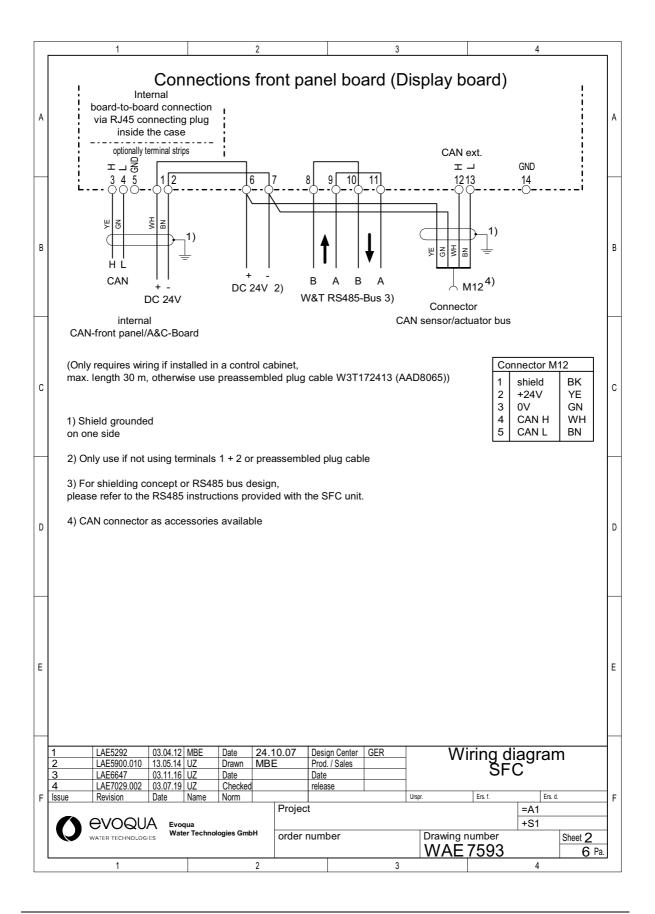
| Item      | Part No.   | Designation |  |
|-----------|--|-------------|--|
| W3T166193 | Accessories set DP-D   | F           |  |
| W3T158874 | Maintenance part<br>set, annualy<br>maintenanceconsisting of: Pos. 1, 32,<br>44, 45, 95, 98, 100<br>special gease UNISILKON<br>(tube, W2T504248) |             |  |
| W3T158878 | Maintenance part<br>set, every 4 yearsconsisting of: Pos. 1, 7, 25,<br>28, 32, 41, 42, 44, 45, 47,<br>50, 95, 98, 100                            |             |  |
| W3T166180 | Seal set (for conductivity sensor)   |             |  |
| W3T158882 | Set of spare parts for volumetric flow control   |             |  |

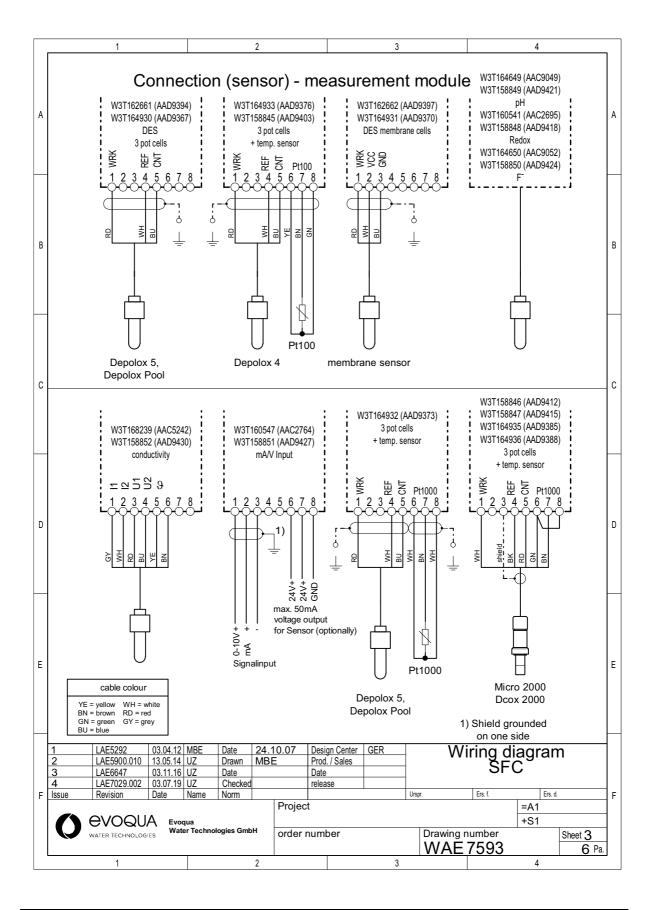
8.

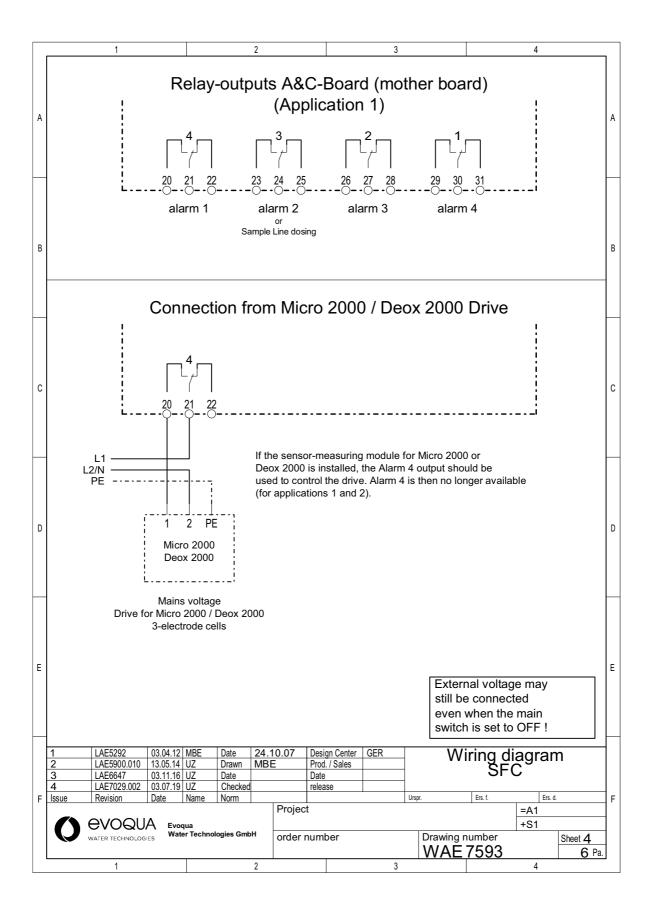
# 9. Wiring Diagrams



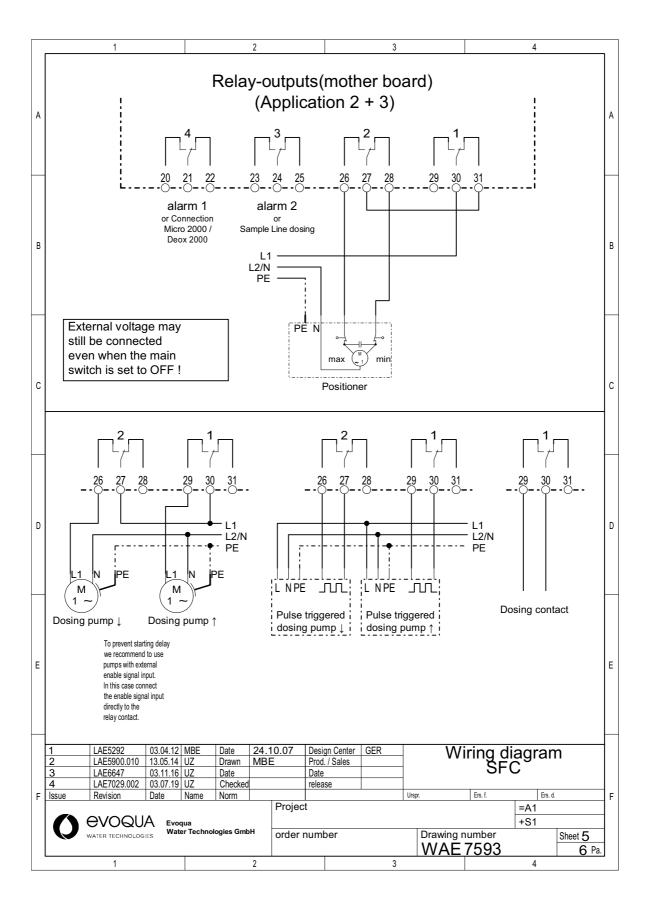
9.

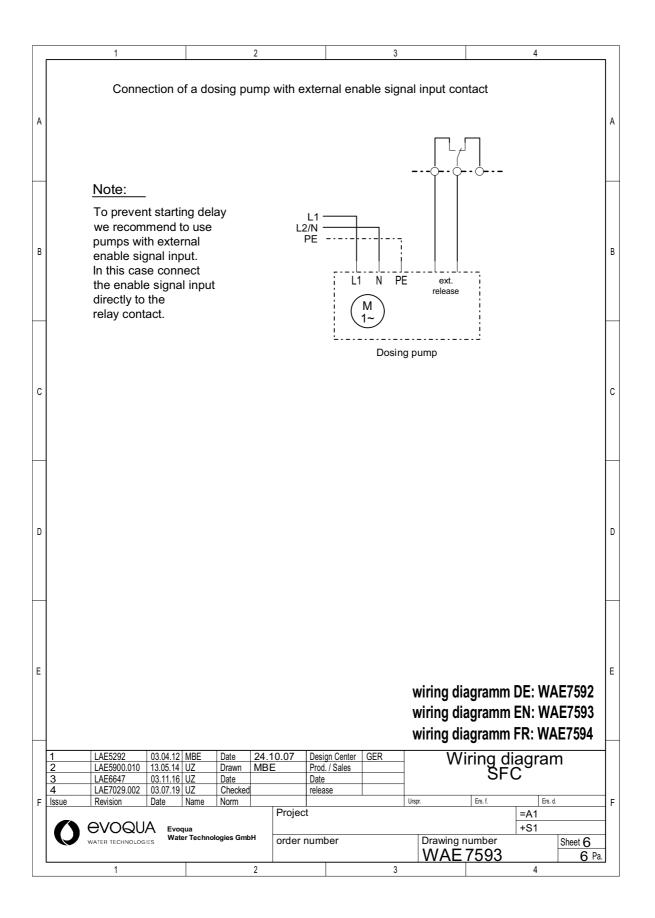






9





### **10.Declarations and certificates**

#### **10.1** Declaration of Conformity

## EG-Konformitätserklärung EC Declaration of Conformity

Déclaration CE de conformité

No. MAE1272 Ausgabe/issue/édition 05

 Hersteller/Manufacturer/Constructeur:
 Evoqua Water Technologies GmbH

 Anschrift/Address/Adresse:
 Auf der Weide 10, D-89312 Günzburg

 Produktbezeichnung:
 Serie SFC

 Product description:
 Series SFC

 Description du produit:
 Séries SFC

Das bezeichnete Produkt stimmt in der von uns in Verkehr gebrachten Ausführung mit den Vorschriften folgender europäischer Richtlinien überein:

The product described above in the form as delivered is in conformity with the provisions of the following European Directives: Le produit désigné est conforme, dans la version que nous avons mise en circulation, avec les prescriptions des directives européennes suivantes :

 2014/30/EU Richtlinie des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 26. Februar 2014 zur Harmonisierung der Rechtsvorschriften der Mitgliedstaaten über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit. Directive of the European Parlament and of the Council of 26 February 2014 on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility. Directive du Parlement européen et du Conseil du 26 février 2014 relative au rapprochement des législations des Etats membres concernant la compatibilité électromagnétique.
 2014/35/EU Richtlinie des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 26. Februar 2014 zur Harmonisierung der Rechtsvorschriften der Mitgliedstaaten betreffend elektrische

Harmonisierung der Rechtsvorschriften der Mitgliedstaaten betreffend elektrische Betriebsmittel zur Verwendung innerhalb bestimmter Spannungsgrenzen.
Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 February 2014 on the harmonisation of the laws of Member States relating to electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits.
Directive du Parlement européen et du Conseil du 26 février 2014 concernant le rapprochement des législations des Etats membres relatives au matériel électrique destiné à être employé dans certaines limites de tension.
CE-Kennzeichnung / CE marking / Marquage CE: 2016

Seite 1 von 2



Die Konformität mit den Richtlinien wird nachgewiesen durch die Einhaltung der in der Nachweisdokumentation aufgelisteten Normen. Evidence of conformity to the Directives is assured through the application of the standards listed in the relevant documentation. La conformité avec les directives est assurée par le respect des normes listés dans la documentation téchnique correspondante.

Benannte Person für technische Unterlagen: *Authorized person for the technical file:*  **Personne désignée pour la documentation technique:** Name / name / nom: Evoqua Water Technologies GmbH

Adresse / addresse / addresse: Auf der Weide 10, D-89312 Günzburg

Günzburg, den / the 2016-04-19 Evoqua Water Technologies GmbH

V. Mau

Klaus Andre Technischer Leiter / Director Engineering

Unterschrift signature / signature

Herewite

Helmut Fischer Leiter QM / Quality Manager

Unterschrift signature / signature

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie nach §443 BGB. Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

This declaration certifies the conformity to the specified directives but does not imply any warranty for properties. The safety documentation accompanying the product shall be considered in detail.

La présente déclaration atteste de la concordance avec les directives citées, elle n'offre cependant pas de garantie quant à la nature ou la durabilité selon l'article 443 du code civil allemand. Les consignes de sécurité de la documentation du produit fournie sont à respecter.

Dokument: VD130-1\_CE\_Konformitätserklärung.doc

# 10.2 Certificate of Compliance

| CSA<br>Group   |  |  |                        |  |  |
|--|--|--|------------------------|--|--|
| C  | ertificate o   | f Compl                                    | iance                  |  |  |
| Certificate:   | 2008605  | Master Con                                 | tract: 226676          |  |  |
| Project:   | 70006009   | Date Issued                                | : May 29, 2014         |  |  |
| Issued to:   | Evoqua Water Technologies GmbH   |  |                        |  |  |
| ÷  | Auf der Weide 10<br>Gunzburg, 89312<br>Germany<br>Attention: Wolfgang Kleiber  |  |                        |  |  |
| N  | The products listed below<br>Iark shown with adjacer<br>Canada and US or with<br>US only or without either   | t indicators 'C' and<br>adjacent indicator | l 'US' for<br>'US' for |  |  |
|  | CONTRACTOR Arme Drowin<br>Issued by: Anne Drouin   |  |                        |  |  |
| PRODUCTS   |  |  |                        |  |  |
|  | CLASS 3631 05 - ELECTRICAL MEASUREMENT AND TEST EQUIPMENT<br>CLASS 3631 85 - ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT FOR MEASUREMENT USE - Certified to<br>US Standards                         |  |                        |  |  |
| Water analyse<br>Rated: 100-24                                 | Water analysers**, Models: SFC, SFC-PC* and SFC-SC*, permanently connected, permanently installed, Rated: 100-240Vac, 50/60Hz, 15W or 24Vdc, 15W; IPX0.                      |  |                        |  |  |
|  | <u>Notes:</u><br>The above model is Equipment Class 1 (for 100-240Vac rated units) and Class III (for 24Vdc rated units),<br>Pollution Degree II and Measurement Category 2. |  |                        |  |  |
| *: PC stands   | *: PC stands for Process Control and SC stand for Signal Conditioning.   |  |                        |  |  |
| <b>**</b> : Can be used with the following flow block modules: |  |  |                        |  |  |
| DP-XX  | DP-XX Flow block module "Depolox Pool" for application in the pool market  |  |                        |  |  |
|  |  |  |                        |  |  |
| DQD 507 Rev. 2012-05-22  |  | Page: 1                                    |                        |  |  |

| CSA<br>Group                    |   |   |   |  |  |
|---------------------------------|---|---|---|--|--|
| Certificate:                    | 2008605   | Master Contract: 226676   |   |  |  |
| Project:                        | 70006009  | Date Issued: May 29, 2014   | _ |  |  |
| D5-XX                           | Flow block module "Depolox 5"   | for application in the potable water market                                 |   |  |  |
| VS-XX                           | Flow block module "VariaSens"   | for application in the potable water market                                 |   |  |  |
| These Flow bl<br>(Drucklos: Pro | locks are available in two versions<br>essure less) or DF ( <i>Druckfest</i> : pres | s for pressure less or pressurized application. XX stands for DL ssurized). |   |  |  |
|                                 | for the type of sensor used in the  | unit: TC1 (total chlorine), FC1 (free chlorine), CD7 (chlorine              |   |  |  |
| <u>APPLICABI</u>                | <u>LE REQUIREMENTS</u>  |   |   |  |  |
| CAN/CSA-C2                      | 22.2 No. 61010-1-04 - Safety H  | Requirements for Electrical Equipment for Measurement,                      |   |  |  |
|                                 | Laboratory Use, Part 1: General R<br>51010-1 (2nd Edition) - Safety                 | Requirements for Electrical Equipment for Measurement,                      |   |  |  |
| Control, and I                  | Laboratory Use - Part 1: General F  | Requirements  |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |
|                                 |   |   |   |  |  |

# **11.Settings Table**



#### Please note

This settings table shows all of the settings available in SFC. Depending on the application selected and the sensor measuring modules fitted, various menu items, menu parameters and setting parameters may be hidden. Cross out any that are not applicable. Make a note of your settings here.

Please refer to the settings table inside the control cabinet too (optional).

| Selected application | Factory settings: 2 | Commissioning: |
|----------------------|---------------------|----------------|
|----------------------|---------------------|----------------|

| Menu          | Menu parameters  | Setting parameters<br>(factory setting) | Commissioning |
|---------------|------------------|---|---------------|
| Module type 1 |                  |   |               |
| Control       | Control mode     |   |               |
|               | Setpoint         |   |               |
|               | Setpoint source  | internal                                |               |
|               | Dosing factor    | 100 %                                   |               |
|               | Dos. fact source | internal                                |               |
|               | Yout-factor      | 1.0                                     |               |
| Actuator      | Control output   | Dosing pump 2P                          |               |
|               | Тр               | 60 s                                    |               |
|               | Ту               | 90 s                                    |               |
|               | Sample time T    | 20 s                                    |               |
|               | Ym calibration   | Auto                                    |               |
|               | Ym calibration   | Manual                                  |               |
|               | Ym calib. points | 2                                       |               |
|               | max. Pulse/min   | 100                                     |               |
|               | Hysteresis       |   |               |
|               | min. ON          | 10min00s                                |               |

| Menu            | Menu parameters      | Setting parameters<br>(factory setting)                                     | Commissioning |
|-----------------|----------------------|---|---------------|
| Setup           | Flow source          | Flow measurement  |               |
|                 | Flow dirtect ion     | direct  |               |
|                 | Control Input 2      | Off   |               |
|                 | Input direction      | direct  |               |
|                 | Control direct       | direct  |               |
|                 | X factor             | 1,0   |               |
|                 | Ymin                 | 0 %   |               |
|                 | Ymax                 | 100 %   |               |
| Parameter       | Xsh                  | 1,0 %   |               |
|                 | Tkonst               | 1min00s   |               |
|                 | Tvar                 | 00min30s  |               |
|                 | Max. lin. correction | 50 %  |               |
|                 | Control factor       | 1,0   |               |
|                 | Хр                   | 100 %   |               |
|                 | Tn                   | 20 min  |               |
|                 | PI shutdown          | 5 %   |               |
| Measuring range | Range start          |   |               |
|                 | рН                   | 4.00  |               |
|                 | mV                   | 400 mV  |               |
|                 | mA/V                 | 0 %   |               |
|                 | Range end            |   |               |
|                 | рН                   | 9.00  |               |
|                 | mV                   | 900 mV  |               |
|                 | mA/V                 | 100 %   |               |
|                 | Measuring range      |   |               |
|                 | Cl <sub>2</sub>      | 1,00 mg/l   |               |
|                 | Mem                  | 1,0 mg/l  |               |
|                 | F <sup>-</sup>       | 2,00 mg/l   |               |
|                 | LF                   | 10,00 mS/cm   |               |
|                 | Sensor type          | Definition of the senosr<br>with 3-electrode cells:<br>free Cl <sub>2</sub> |               |
|                 |                      | Definition of the senosr<br>with membrane cells:<br>Cl-N total              |               |
|                 | Unit                 |   |               |
|                 | Cl <sub>2</sub>      | mg/l  |               |
|                 | Mem                  | mg/l  |               |

| Menu          | Menu parameters             | Setting parameters<br>(factory setting)  | Commissioning |
|---------------|-----------------------------|--|---------------|
|               | mA/V                        | %  |               |
|               | Sensor name                 | " " "<br>— — — —   |               |
|               | Format                      | 000.0  |               |
|               | Upot                        | 250 mV   |               |
|               | µA measuring<br>range       | Select the µA signal<br>measuring range for<br>3-electrode cells and<br>membrane sensors:<br>100 µA<br>for Micro 2000 and<br>Deox 2000: 100 µA |               |
|               | Signal Cl <sub>2</sub> free | CAN external   |               |
|               | Signal                      | 0 – 20 mA  |               |
|               | Factor                      |  |               |
|               | Reference temp.             | 20°C / 25°C  |               |
|               | Salt displ.                 | NaCl in g/l  |               |
| Limit value 1 | Min I                       |  |               |
|               | Max I                       |  |               |
|               | Min II                      |  |               |
|               | Max II                      |  |               |
|               | Hysteresis                  |  |               |
| Limit value 2 | Min Yout/Ym                 | 20 %   |               |
|               | Max Yout/Ym                 | 80 %   |               |
|               | Hysteresis                  | 5 %  |               |
|               | Min Ypi                     | 20 %   |               |
|               | Max Ypi                     | 80 %   |               |
|               | Hysterese                   | 5,0 %  |               |
| Adaption      | Tu                          | 1min00s  |               |
|               | Ts                          | 00h10min00s  |               |

| Menu            | Menu parameters   | Setting parameters<br>(factory setting) | Commissioning |
|-----------------|-------------------|---|---------------|
| Module type 2   |                   |   |               |
| Actuator        | Control output    | Dosing pump 2P                          |               |
|                 | Hysteresis        |   |               |
|                 | min. ON           | 10min00s                                |               |
| Setup           | Control direction | direct                                  |               |
| Measuring range | Range start       |   |               |
|                 | рН                | 4.00                                    |               |
|                 | Range end         |   |               |
|                 | рН                | 9.00                                    |               |
| Limit value     | Min               |   |               |
|                 | Max               |   |               |
|                 | Hysteresis        |   |               |

| Menu               | Menu parameters | Setting parameters<br>(factory setting) | Commissioning |
|--------------------|-----------------|---|---------------|
| External Functions | Sample Line Dos | Off                                     |               |
|                    | Range start     | 1: 00:00                                |               |
|                    | Dosing time     | 00min30s                                |               |
|                    | Delay           | 00min30s                                |               |
|                    | SW stop time    | 01min30s                                |               |
|                    | Hold delay      | 15min00s                                |               |

| Menu                | Menu parameters | Setting parameters (factory setting) | Commissioning |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|
| Input/Output        |                 |                                      |               |
| Flow rateWq         | Signal          | 0 – 20 mA                            |               |
|                     | Factor          | 1,1                                  |               |
|                     | Format          | 0000                                 |               |
|                     | Unit            | %                                    |               |
|                     | Range start     | 000.0 %                              |               |
|                     | Range end       | 100.0 %                              |               |
| Flow limit values   | Min             | 20 %                                 |               |
|                     | Max             | 80 %                                 |               |
|                     | Hysteresis      | 0.5 %                                |               |
| ext. setpoint / DF  | Signal          | 0 – 20 mA,                           |               |
|                     | Factor          | 1,0                                  |               |
| Setpoint / DF limit | Min             | 20 %                                 |               |
| values              | Max             | 80 %                                 |               |
|                     | Hysteresis      | 05 %                                 |               |
| Analog out          | mA Signal       | Off                                  |               |
|                     | mA              | Measured value                       |               |
| Digital input       | DI (1)          | MW-STOP FCT                          |               |
|                     | DI (2)          |                                      |               |
| Interface           | RS485 Adress    | 01                                   |               |

| Menu                    | Menu parameters  | Setting parameters<br>(factory setting) | Commissioning |
|-------------------------|------------------|---|---------------|
| Alarm                   |                  |   |               |
|                         | Alarm 1 function | N.O. unlatched                          |               |
|                         | Alarm 1 delay    | 00h00min00s                             |               |
|                         | Alarm 2 function | N.O. unlatched                          |               |
|                         | Alarm 2 delay    | 00h00min00s                             |               |
|                         | Alarm 3 function | N.O. unlatched                          |               |
|                         | Alarm 3 delay    | 00h00min00s                             |               |
|                         | Alarm 4 function | N.O. unlatched                          |               |
|                         | Alarm 4 delay    | 00h00min00s                             |               |
| Alarm assign<br>Alarm 1 |                  |   |               |
| Alarm assign<br>Alarm 2 |                  |   |               |
| Alarm assign<br>Alarm 3 |                  |   |               |
| Alarm assign<br>Alarm 4 |                  |   |               |

| Menu               | Menu parameters   | Setting parameters<br>(factory setting) | Commissioning |
|--------------------|-------------------|---|---------------|
| System             |                   |   |               |
| General            | Time (hh:mm)      | current time                            |               |
|                    | Date (tt.mm.jj)   | current date                            |               |
|                    | Measure. filter   | Off                                     |               |
|                    | Hold Function     | Off                                     |               |
|                    | Language          | English                                 |               |
|                    | System name       | SFC-PC                                  |               |
|                    | Brightness Max    | 50 %                                    |               |
|                    | Brightness Min    | 10 %                                    |               |
| Configuration      | Save              | Config 1                                |               |
|                    | Restore           | Config 1                                |               |
|                    | Сору              | Config 1 -> SD                          |               |
| Safety             | Feed delay        | 3min00s                                 |               |
|                    | Samp. water delay | 1min00s                                 |               |
|                    | System password   | 0000                                    |               |
|                    | Calib password    |   |               |
| Trend Graph        | Channel 1         | Measured value                          |               |
|                    | Channel 2         | Temperature                             |               |
| Module designation | Module            |   |               |
| System reset       | System restart    | no                                      |               |
|                    | Delete graph      | no                                      |               |
|                    | Standard values   | no                                      |               |
|                    | Delete dos. avg.  | no                                      |               |
|                    | Dosing factors    | 50 %                                    |               |

Settings changed from:

Settings changed on:

Index

12.

# 12.Index

#### A

Adaption program 43 Alarms 95 Arrangement of the plug-in card and cable 137

#### С

Cable extension 136 Calibration Combined chlorine 205 Calibration aids 202 CAN interface 107 Carry out adaption 98 Cleaning/replacing the fine filter 226 **Conductivity Measurement 55** Configuration 68, 116 Connect the device to the power supply 148 Connecting sensors 135 **Control direction 89** Control factor 88 **Control Parameters 87** Controller outputs 43, 84 **Conventions 6** Current 159

#### D

DEPOLOX® 5 setting guideline 48 Digital input 181 Digital inputs 113 DIN contact 106

### E

Error messages 213

#### F

Feed delay 189 Felt ring remove 140 Fieldbus 110 Filling electrolyte 225 Firmware update 106 Fitting the fine filter 147 Flow rate direction 87 Flow rate source 87 Fluoride Measurement 52 Free chlorine FC1 membrane sensor 63 Functions 41

#### G

General Functions 41 General messages 160 Graphic display 157

#### I

Indicators 158 Inserting Sensors 135 Installation guide 129 Installation site 119 Interface 181 Interfaces 44, 106

#### Μ

mA inputs 64 mA output 66 mA output module (four-way) 66 Main menu 166 Main menu trend graphs 168 Maintaining conductivity electrode 229 Maintaining fluoride electrode 228 Maintaining pH electrode 228 Maintaining Redox electrode 227 Max.lin.Corr 87 Measure, filter 189 Membrane sensor for free chlorine 63 Membrane sensor free chlorine FC2 58 Membrane sensors 56 Menu structure 165 Module type 1 Menu select 171, 177

## Ν

Notes on operation 163

#### 0

Opening the housing 119 Operator Controls 162 Overall Function 42

#### Ρ

Password 163 pH calibration 207 pH measurement 50 PI shutdown 88

#### R

RC circuits 66 Redox calibration (mV) 209 Redox Measurement 51 Relay Module (eight-way) 66 Relay outputs 66 Replacing diaphragms 224 Replacing reference electrode 224 Replacing the fuse 230 RS232 106 RS485 106

#### S

Safety Personnel 8 Safety functions 43 Sample water delay 189 Sample water inlet disinfection 103 SD memory card 114 Service address 213 Setpoint 89 Setting DEPOLOX® 5 Upot 48 Settings Table 277 Single feed forward 71 Smooth switching 199 Softkeys 159 Standard values 189 Storage 119 Switching on 150 System restart 189 System shut down 155

T T 89 Tconst 89 Temperature measurement 117 Tn 89 Tp 90 Ts 90 Tu 91 Tvar 91 Ty 91

U Update 106

#### Х

X direction 92 X factor 91 Xp 92 Xsh 92

#### Y Ym calibration 93 Ymax 93 Ymin 94

Yout-factor 94

## Wallace & Tiernan<sup>®</sup> Products worldwide

Australia +61 1300 661 809 info.au@evoqua.com

France +33 1 41 15 92 20 wtfra@evoqua.com

UK +44 300 124 0500 info.uk@evoqua.com Canada +1 905 944 2800 wtoe.can@evoqua.com

Germany +49 8221 9040 wtger@evoqua.com

**USA** +1 800 524 6324 wt.us@evoqua.com **China** +86 21 5118 3777 sales.cn@evoqua.com

Singapore +65 6559 2600 sales.sg@evoqua.com



# Wallace & Tiernan®

an **EVOQUA** brand



Auf der Weide 10, 89312 Günzburg, Germany

+49 (8221) 904-0 www.evoqua.com

In some countries, DEPOLOX, OSEC, Barrier, Chem-Ad and Wallace & Tiernan are trademarks of Evoqua, its subsidiaries or affiliated companies.

No part of this document may be reproduced in any form (printed, photocopy, microfilm, or any other procedure) or saved, processed, copied, or distributed using electronic data systems - without the express prior written consent of Evoqua Water Technologies GmbH.

All information in this document is considered reliable and corresponds to the generally applicable technical standards. Evoqua assumes no responsibility for the completeness of this information. Users are responsible for making sure that the product is suitable for specific applications. Evoqua assumes no liability for specific or indirect damage or consequential damage arising from the sale, resale or misuse of its products.

© 2019 Evoqua Water Technologies GmbH Subject to modifications

WT.050.590.000.DE.IM.0719 W3T168777 Issue 17-0719